

D9

OWNERS MANUAL



DENZA

TECHNOLOGY DRIVES ELEGANCE

Foreword

Thank you for choosing DENZA. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing DENZA. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION", and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.



is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

It is forbidden to copy, store, or disseminate this manual electronically or in any other form without written authorization from BYD

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....	7
Dashboard.....	8
Center Console.....	9
Doors.....	10

Safety

Seat Belts.....	12
Seat Belt Overview.....	12
Using Seat Belts.....	12
Airbags.....	16
Airbag Overview.....	16
Airbag Types.....	17
Airbag Triggering Conditions.....	19
Child Restraint System.....	22
Child Restraint System.....	22
Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....	27
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....	27
Selecting Working Mode of Dual- Mode System.....	28
Working Mode Precautions of Dual- Mode System.....	29
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	32
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	32
Data Collection and Processing.....	32
Data Collection and Processing.....	32

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster.....	38
Instrument Cluster View.....	38
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	39

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....	52
Keys.....	52
Locking/Unlocking Doors.....	56
Power Sliding Doors.....	62
Smart Access and Start System.....	64
Child Protection Lock.....	66
Seat.....	67
Seat Precautions.....	67
Adjusting Front Seats.....	67
Adjusting Second-Row Seats.....	70
Adjusting Rear Seats.....	71
Head Supports.....	72
Steering Wheel.....	75
Steering Wheel.....	75
Wipers.....	78
Wiper Switch.....	78
Replacing Wiper Blades.....	80
Side Mirror.....	81
Interior Rearview Mirror.....	81
Side Mirrors.....	83
Switches.....	83
Light Switches.....	83
Driver's Door Switches.....	86
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side.....	88
Odometer Switch.....	88
Driver Assistance Switches.....	88
Automatic Window Closing*.....	89
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....	89
Mode Switches.....	90
Refrigerator Door Switch Button.....	90
Sunroof Switch.....	91
Interior Light Switch.....	92

Using and Driving

Charging Instructions..... 96

Charging Instructions..... 96

Charging..... 100

Discharging Instructions* 106

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 107

Driving Range Display..... 109

Target SOC Setting..... 109

Battery..... 111

Power Battery..... 111

Low Voltage Battery..... 112

Usage Precautions..... 114

Break-in Period..... 114

Trailer Towing..... 114

Driving Safety Precautions..... 115

Suggestions for Vehicle Use..... 115

Fuel..... 116

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO)

Poisoning..... 118

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle

Service Life..... 118

Carrying Luggage..... 119

Wading into Water..... 120

Fire Prevention..... 121

Starting and Driving..... 123

Starting the Vehicle..... 123

Driving..... 124

DiSus-C* 125

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption.... 125

Gear Shift Controls..... 126

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)..... 127

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 130

Driving Precautions..... 131

Driver Assistance..... 133

About Driver Assistance system..... 133

Driving Assist..... 139

Front Safety Assist..... 149

Side Safety Assist..... 157

Rear Safety Assist..... 166

Light System..... 171

Head-up Display (HUD)* 173

Tire Pressure Monitoring..... 173

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)... 175

Panoramic View System* 175

Parking Assist System..... 177

Driving Safety Systems..... 180

In-Vehicle Devices

A/C System..... 186

A/C Panel..... 186

A/C Operation Interface..... 186

Function Definition..... 187

Vents..... 189

A/C Settings..... 189

Air Purification System..... 190

Storage..... 192

Bill Box..... 192

Door Bins..... 192

Rear Phone Holder* 192

Glove Box..... 193

Center Console Cubby..... 193

Seatback Pockets..... 193

Glasses Case..... 194

Cup Holder..... 194

Other Devices..... 195

Sun visor..... 195

Grab Handles..... 195

USB Ports..... 196

12V Auxiliary Power..... 197

Wireless Phone Charging Location.....	197
Window Sunshade*	199
Tray Table.....	200
Infotainment System.....	201
Infotainment Touchscreen.....	201
Infotainment System.....	202
Vehicle Setting of the Infotainment System.....	203
Gestures and Responses.....	203
OTA Updates.....	203
Bluetooth Call.....	204
BYD Assistant.....	204
Other Applications.....	204
My Car.....	205
Armrest Screen*	205
Phone Projection*	207
Refrigerator.....	210
Refrigerator Operation Interface.....	210
Refrigerator Instructions.....	211
BYD App.....	211
BYD App.....	211
Account Registration.....	211
Vehicle Condition and Control.....	211
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....	212

Maintenance

Maintenance Information.....	214
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....	214
Regular Maintenance.....	219
Regular Maintenance.....	219
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention.....	220
Paint Maintenance Tips.....	220
Exterior Cleaning.....	221
Interior Cleaning.....	223

Power Sliding Doors.....	224
Self-Maintenance.....	225
Self-Maintenance.....	225
Sunroof Maintenance.....	228
Vehicle Storage.....	228
Hood.....	229
Engine Maintenance.....	229
Cooling System.....	230
Braking System.....	231
Washer.....	231
Fuel filter.....	232
A/C System.....	232
Wiper Blades.....	232
Tire.....	233
Fuses.....	236

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur.....	238
Reflective vest.....	238
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....	238
If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on... ..	238
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....	239
If the Engine is Overheated.....	240
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....	240
If a Tire Goes Flat.....	242

Technical Data

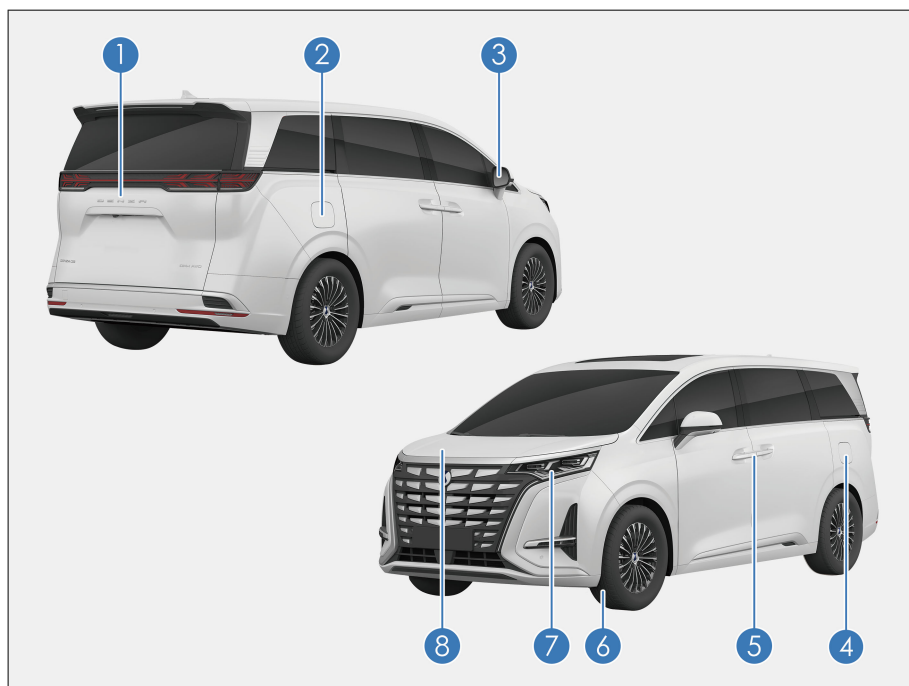
Data.....	246
Vehicle Data.....	246
Vehicle Identification.....	250
Information.....	251
Warning Labels.....	251
Transponder Mounting.....	252

Abbreviations

Abbreviations.....	257
--------------------	-----

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Locking/Unlocking the Trunk **P59**

Carrying Luggage **P119**

2 Charge Port Door **P100**

Using DC Charging Piles **P103**

3 Side Mirror Adjustment **P83**

4 Fuel door **P116**

5 Doors **P57**

6 Tires **P242**

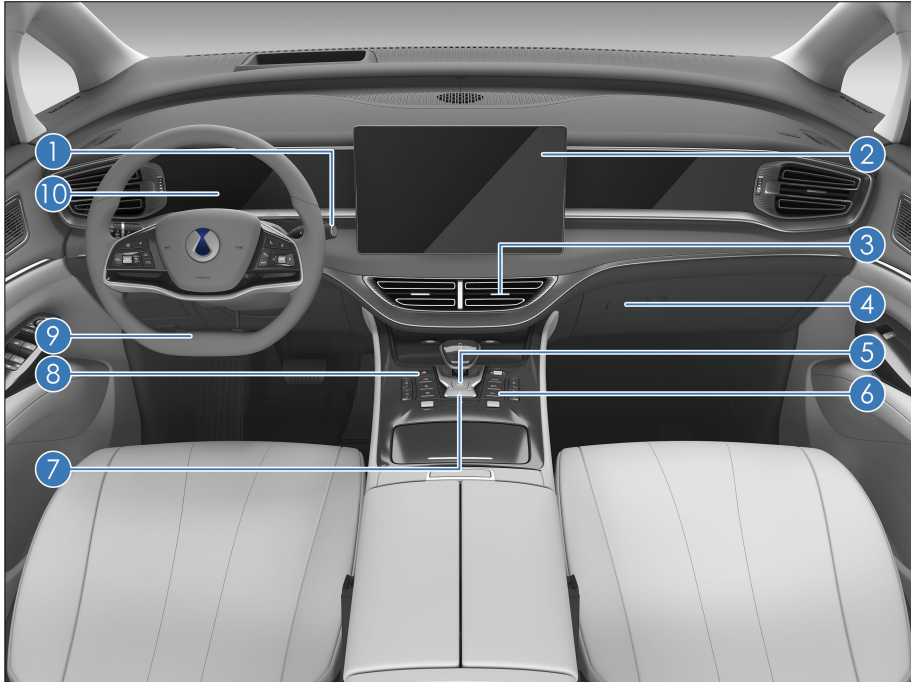
7 Combination Lights **P83**

8 Opening the Hood **P229**

Coolant **P230**

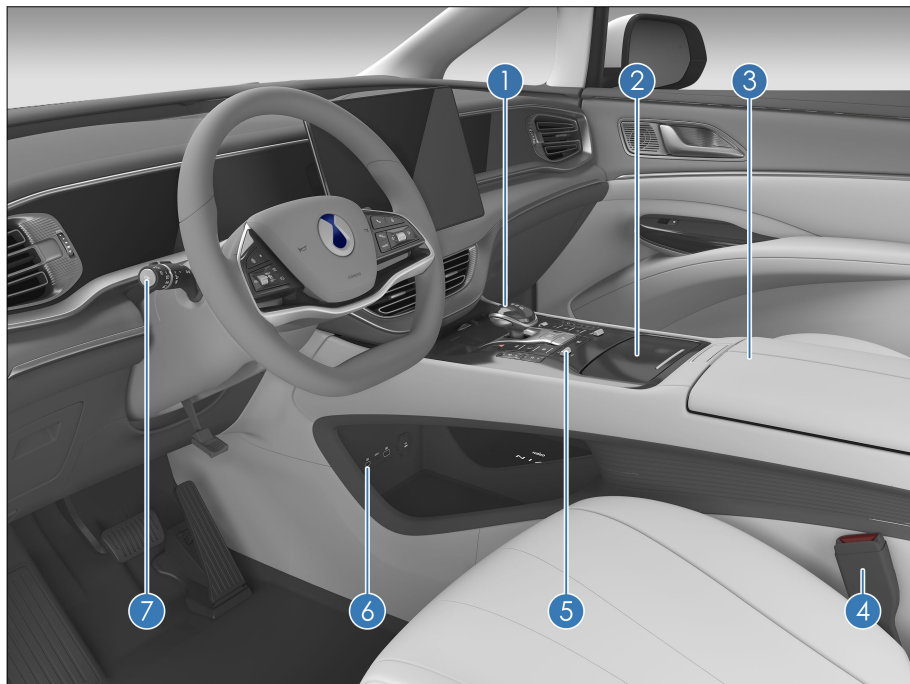
Brake Fluid **P231**

Dashboard



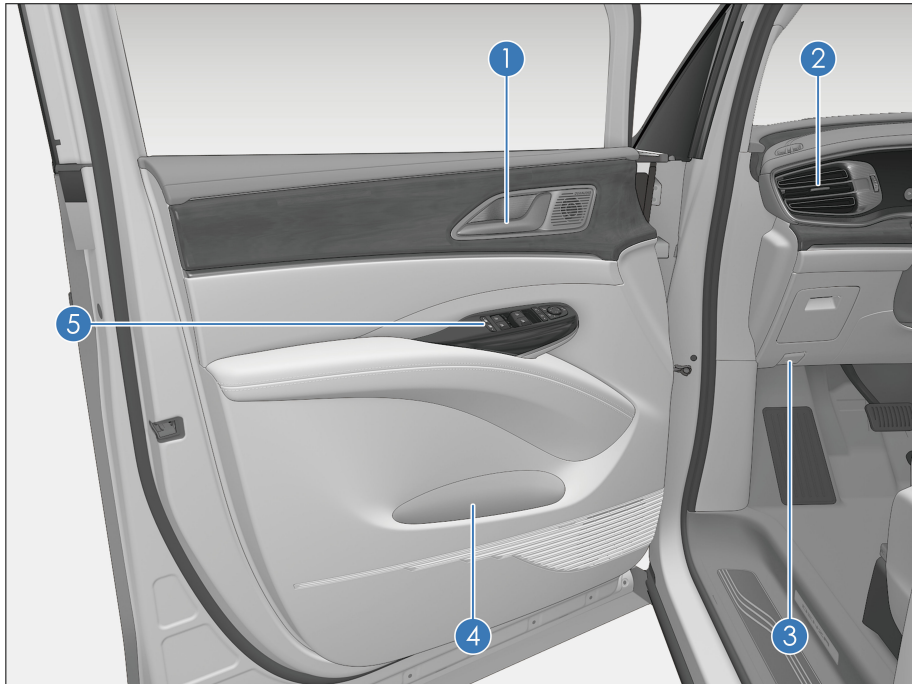
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Wiper Switch P78 | 7 P Gear Button P126 |
| 2 Infotainment Touchscreen P201 | Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Switch P127 |
| A/C Settings Interface P189 | |
| A/C Function Definitions P187 | 8 Hazard Warning Light Switch P89 |
| 3 Front Center Vent P189 | 9 Adjusting the Steering Wheel P78 |
| 4 Glove Box P193 | Steering Wheel Switches P75 |
| 5 START/STOP Button P123 | 10 Instrument Cluster P38 |
| 6 A/C Panel Buttons P186 | |

Center Console



- | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 | Gear Shift Controls P126 | 5 | Mode Switches P90 |
| 2 | Cup Holder P194 | 6 | Front-Row USB Ports P196 |
| 3 | Center Console Cubby P193 | 7 | Light Switches P83 |
| 4 | Using Seat Belts P12 | | |

Doors



1 Interior Door Handle **P56**

2 Front Side Vents **P189**

3 Hood Handle **P229**

4 Door Bins **P192**

5 Driver's Door Switches **P86**

01

SAFETY

Seat Belts.....	12
Airbags.....	16
Child Restraint System.....	22
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...	27
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	32
Data Collection and Processing.....	32

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering, or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
 - The seat belts are designed primarily for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see **P22** in this chapter).
 - If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
-
- All occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to avoid personal injury or death in case of an accident.
 - Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This

will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

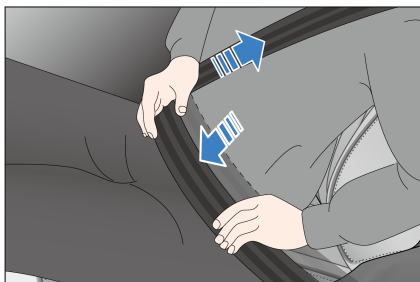
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

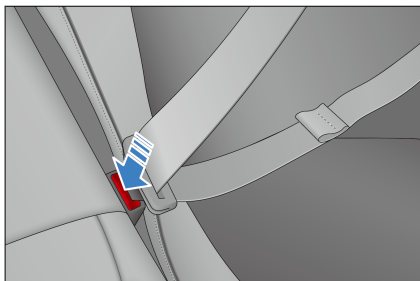
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see **P67**).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.
 - Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.

- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.

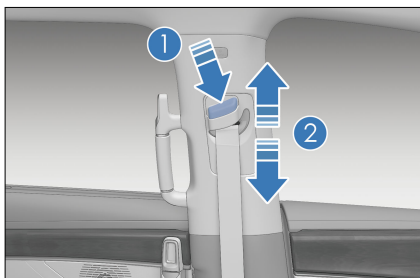


3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

- ① Press the adjuster release button.
- ② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



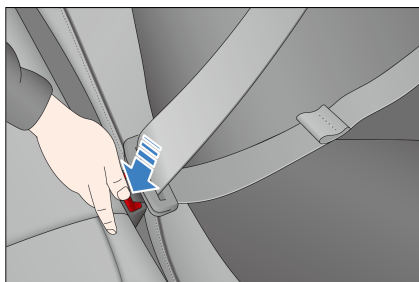
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder, otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.

WARNING

- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door or rear seatback; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Seat belts with pretensioner function activated must be replaced.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front

WARNING

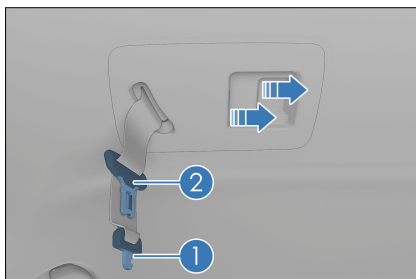
seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

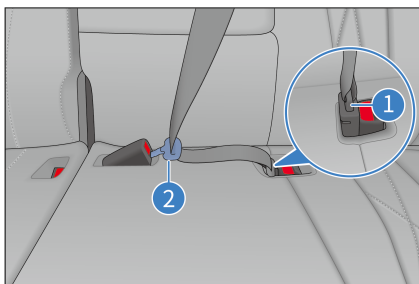
Using the Rear Middle Seat Belt

Using the rear middle seat belt

- Pull out small buckle latch ① and latch ② from the slot in the roof.

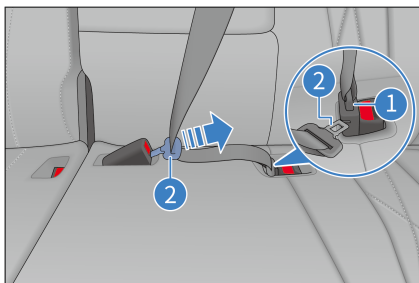


- Align small buckle latch ① with the buckle and ensure that the seat belt is not twisted. Insert small buckle latch ① into the buckle.
- Insert latch ② into the other buckle until it clicks.
- Pull on the belt to confirm that the latches are securely fastened.



Releasing the rear center seat belt

- Press the red button beside the buckle, and latch ② releases automatically.
- Insert buckle latch ② into the slot on the side of the buckle, and the small latch ① then releases automatically.
- Hold the seat belt to allow it to retract slowly.



! REMINDER

- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.
- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

Any unfastened seat belt will trigger this indicator to light up and flash as required.

- Display of unfastened belt's seat

The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Seat belt reminder for front and middle passengers

If the driver or front passenger has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupant.

- When the driver and the front passenger fasten their seat belts, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off.

! WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened or in emergency

 WARNING

braking or collision, passengers are more likely to be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- Airbags are a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include front seat side airbags and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

 WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.

 WARNING

- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a crash, even if the airbag did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a DENZA authorized dealer for inspection as soon as possible to ensure that the airbag system functions correctly.

 Airbag fault warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

 WARNING

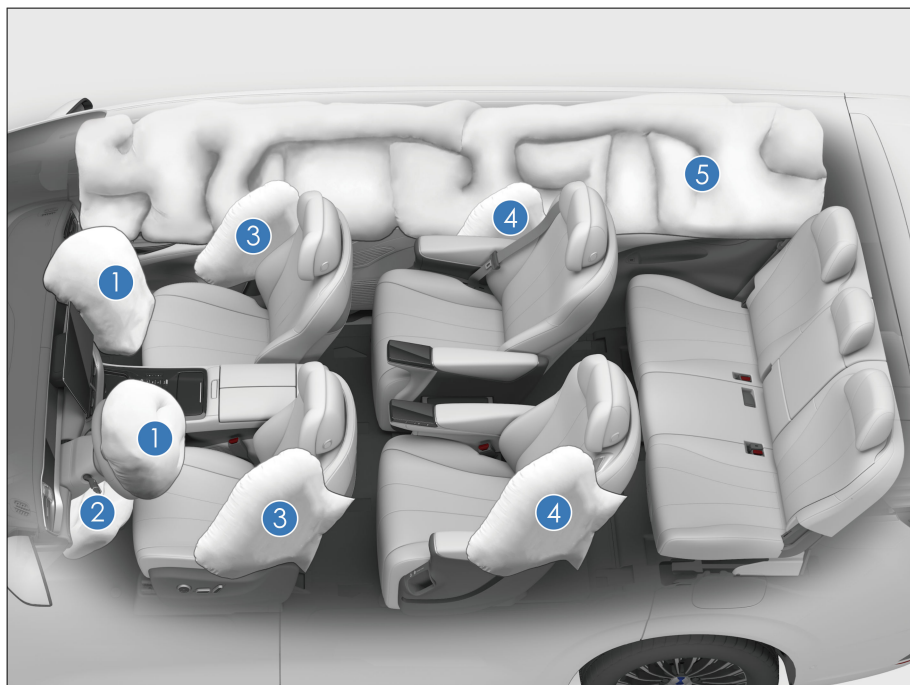
- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, please head to the nearest DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for an airbag system inspection, or it may affect the airbag function.
- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise,

⚠ WARNING

the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types

Airbag Types



① Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

② Knee Airbags

③、④ Seat Side Airbags

⑤ Side curtain airbags

Driver and front passenger airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration

and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.

- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso in place. The airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.

- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- The airbag deploys within a thousandth of a second, so as to provide extra protection for the drivers and passengers in the accidents.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- A cloud of dust from the airbag surface may come off when the airbag deploys. Although such powder is non-toxic, individuals with respiratory problem might experience some temporary discomfort.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Knee Airbag

If the vehicle you purchased is equipped with a knee airbag (located inside the lower trim of the dashboard), when a moderate to severe impact is detected after vehicle power-on and the triggering conditions are met, the knee airbag will deploy to help protect the legs and knees of the driver, so as to reduce the injury to you.

Seat Side Airbags

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions

are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

CAUTION

- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on your own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.

REMINDER

- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Side Curtain Airbags

- The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on A, B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

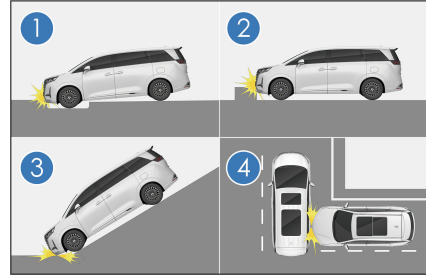
Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the ECU, and the set value. If signals, such as the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the DENZA airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

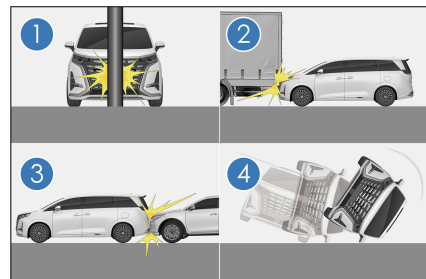
- ① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

- ② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.
- ③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.
- ④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



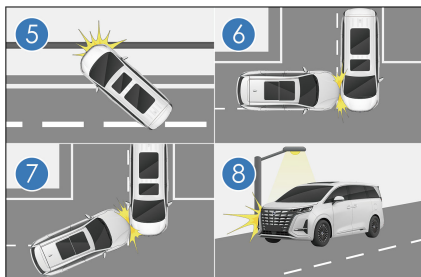
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

- ① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.
- ② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.
- ③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.
- ④ The vehicle rolls over.



- ⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.
- ⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.
- ⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

- ⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



! WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or

! WARNING

the center cap of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.

- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or

! WARNING

unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.

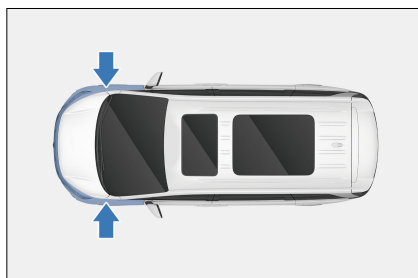
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new owner informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.

! WARNING

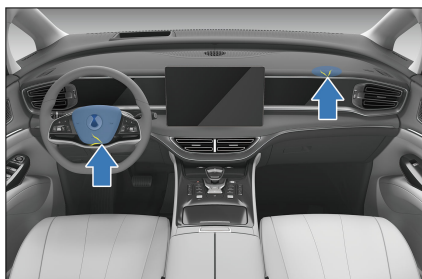
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

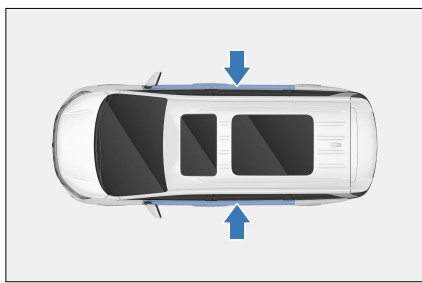
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light  lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the front airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- An impact to a vehicle door (shadowed area in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in

the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.

- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.
- Vehicle with Side Curtain Airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.

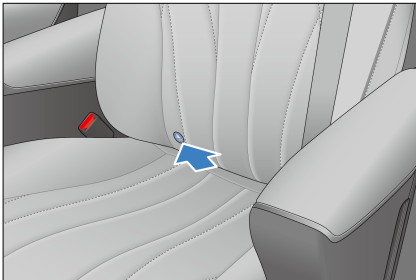
! WARNING

- DENZA strongly suggests you to install child restraint systems. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.

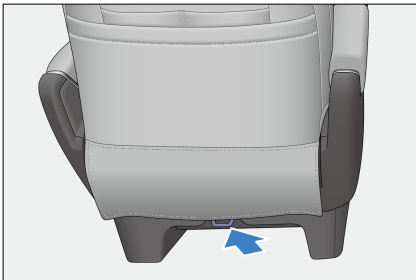
Installing Child Restraint Systems with ISOFIX Rigid Anchor

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraints to the rear seats. The second-row seats are equipped with ISOFIX anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

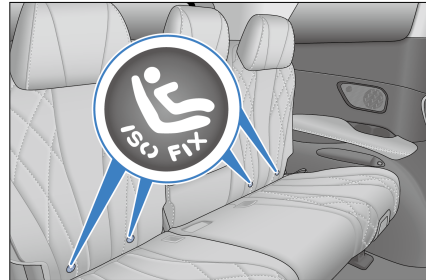
- The second-row seats are equipped with special anchorages. (A label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.)



- The second-row seats are equipped with anchorages on the back.



- The rear outboard seats are equipped with special anchorages. (A label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.)

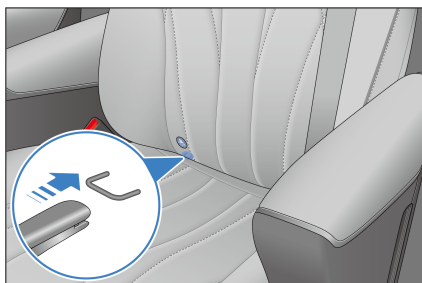
**! REMINDER**

- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.
- The rear seats are equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.

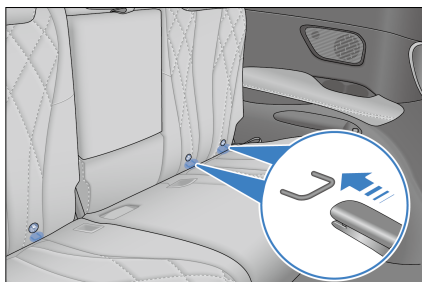
**Installing a child restraint**

1. Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.

Second-Row Seats



Rear Seats



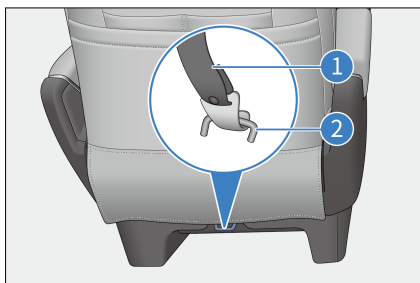
2. Lift the head support, engage the hook tightly to the anchorage at the back of the seatback, and tighten the top tether so that it is fastened.

! REMINDER

- To make it easier to align the child restraint anchor to the anchorage bar, it is recommended to purchase a child restraint with guide slots or add guide slots for convenience.

Second-row seat installation position

- ① Top tether
- ② Anchorage



Third-row seat installation position

- ① Top tether
- ② Anchorage



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the child restraint, install it on the left-hand seat of the second row.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



! WARNING

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring device and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the

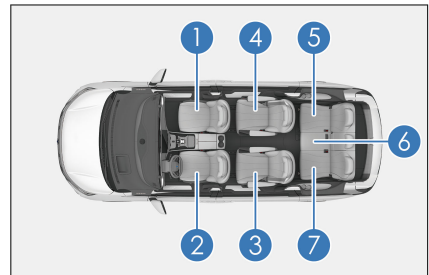
! WARNING

child restraint is securely fixed, otherwise emergency parking or an accident may result in serious even fatal injury to a child.

- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Recommended seating positions for installing child restraint systems

- ① Front passenger seat
- ② Driver seat
- ③ Second-row left seat
- ④ Second-row right seat
- ⑤ Rear right seat
- ⑥ Rear center seat
- ⑦ Rear left seat



Type	Seating Position						
	1 ^{a)}	2	3 ^{b)}	4 ^{b)}	5 ^{b)}	6 ^{b)}	7 ^{b)}
Seating position suitable for universal belt	×	×	Yes	Yes	Yes	×	Yes
(Yes/No)							

Type	Seating Position						
	1 ^{a)}	2	3 ^{b)}	4 ^{b)}	5 ^{b)}	6 ^{b)}	7 ^{b)}
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	×	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	×	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

^{a)}If needed, the seating height and the seatback angle can be adjusted so that the child protection equipment can be securely installed.

^{b)}If necessary, the rear head supports can be adjusted or even removed to avoid interference with the child-protection equipment. When a child restraint is not equipped with the seatback, never remove the head support from the vehicle. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

Type	Seating Position						
	1 ^{a)}	2	3 ^{b)}	4 ^{b)}	5 ^{b)}	6 ^{b)}	7 ^{b)}

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

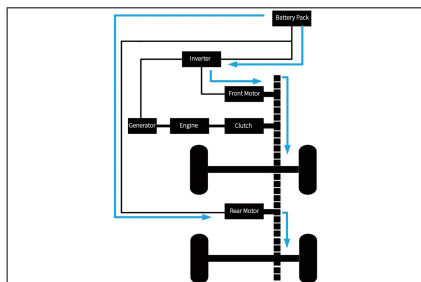
Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing Method
40-83	Joie	i-Spin 360	Belted
76-105	Joie	i-Spin 360	ISOFIX and belted
100-150	Recaro	Mako Elite 2	ISOFIX and belted
137-150	Recaro	Mako Elite 2	Belted

Dual-Mode System Working Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In the pure electric working mode, the power battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the motor, which can meet a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, uniform driving, etc.

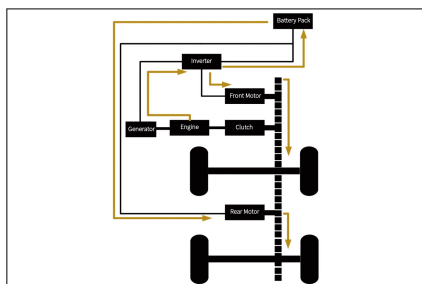


! REMINDER

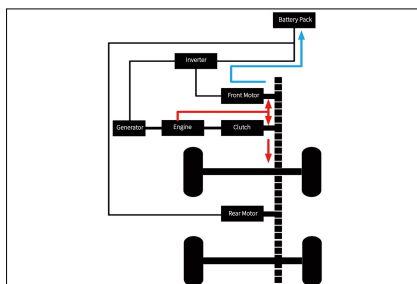
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual-Mode

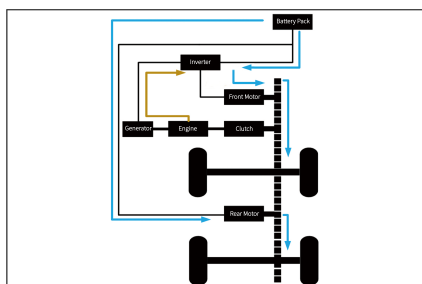
- In HEV mode, when high SOC or low power is required, the engine does not start and the vehicle prioritizes EV mode. As shown in the pure electric operation mode illustration.
- In HEV mode, when low SOC or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series for better dynamic.
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



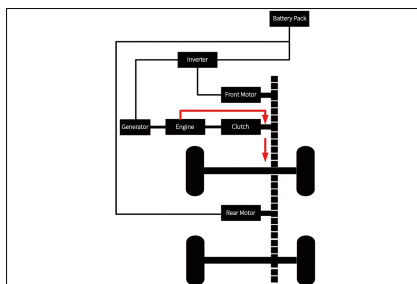
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity, and the battery discharges to power the drive motor.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.

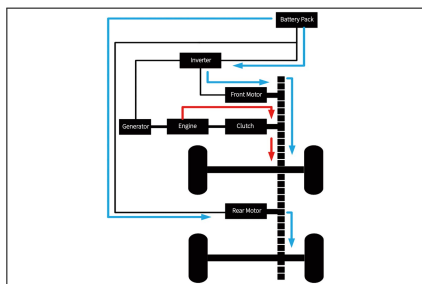


- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine starts to operate in parallel under some working conditions to improve fuel economy:
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.

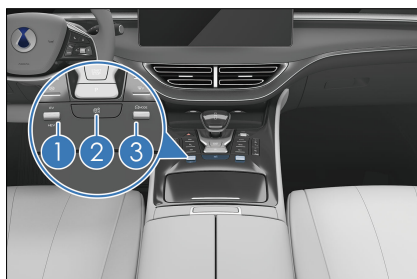


Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System

- ① EV/HEV mode button
- ② Snow mode button
- ② "MODE" button



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.



EV-Economic mode:

Toggle the "EV" button forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is

in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-Comfort mode:

- Toggle the "EV" button forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-Sport mode:

- Toggle the "EV" button forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-Economic mode:

- Toggle the "HEV" button backwards, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-Comfort mode:

- Toggle the "HEV" button backwards, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT

mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-Sport mode:

- Toggle the "HEV" button backwards, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

MAX EV drive mode:

- This mode meets the demand of "using electricity only without fuel", which ensures the pure electric driving of vehicles to the greatest extent. If you need to enter MAX EV mode when the battery SOC is high, toggle the "EV" button forward for about 3s until the "EV" indicator on the instrument cluster shows blue. At this time, the output power is limited to some extent, and when the battery SOC is low, the vehicle automatically switches to the "HEV-ECO" mode.

Snow Mode

- The driver press the snow mode button to enter the snow mode, and press it again to exit.
- This mode is suitable for slippery roads like snow.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-

voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:

- When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
- If the temperature is lower than -30 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be charged.
- If the temperature is lower than -35 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be discharged.
- It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. The motor may cause serious injury or even endanger life.
- Please read all warning labels.
- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached with warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even lifethreatening injuries.
- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed

in Neutral, Reverse or Drive for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, engage the EPB, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.

- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle, because when the OK indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can move slowly in idle (because the motor drives it).
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle will travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal if the shift lever is placed in the "R" or "D" gear, so please pay attention.
- It is recommended to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, it is recommended to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Since a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery is used, it is recommended to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle handling.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations

WARNING

to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.

- Move the vehicle to a safe place.
- Press the "P" button to stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds when all doors are locked.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
 - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
 - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
 - Unlocking the door or the trunk with a valid smart key/App.
 - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
 - Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key/App.
 - Unlocking the door with a valid NFC (card or phone) key.
 - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
 - Pressing the "START/STOP" button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

- Turning on the A/C system with a valid phone App.



WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available at the infotainment system (**Vehicle Settings** → **System Settings** → **More** → **Privacy Policy**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
 - Vehicle velocity
 - Tire pressure condition
 - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
 - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a

near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.

- The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed,

battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors, rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.

- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to DENZA engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to DENZA data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status,

steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- DENZA has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.

- DENZA is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the

use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).

- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- You can also disable Wi-Fi in tapping  → System Settings → Internet → WLAN → Off.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.

- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).

- If required by law, DENZA may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country or region, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- DENZA has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
 - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy

available at the infotainment system
(**Vehicle Settings** → **System Settings**
→ **More** → **Privacy Policy**).

02

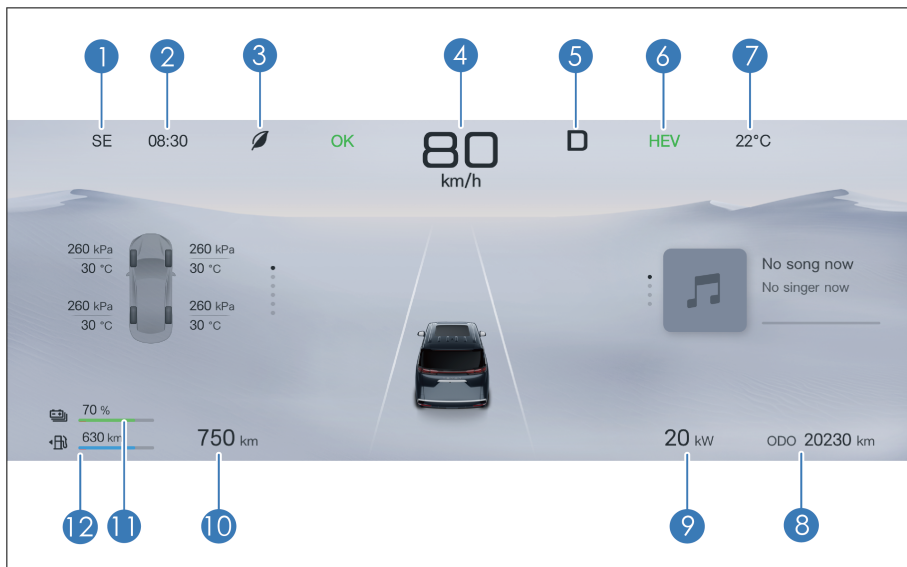
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....38

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1 Direction

2 Time

3 Driving Mode

4 Speedometer

5 Gear status

6 EV/HEV Mode

7 Outside temperature

8 Total mileage

9 Power meter

10 Remaining driving range

11 State of charge (SOC)

12 Fuel gauge

! REMINDER

After OTA upgrade, the combination instrument will enter the simple mode, which is a normal phenomenon. Restart the

! REMINDER

infotainment touchscreen to restore the display.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		Low beam
	AVH indicator		Comfort mode indicator
	LSS indicator		Hill descent control indicator
	Light switch indicator		ELKA activation indicator
	FCW Safe distance warning Indicator*		HMA indicator
	BSD indicator		ICC indicator*
	High beam indicator		ACC status indicator
	ACC standby indicator*		AVH standby indicator
	Comfort mode indicator		Economic mode indicator
	Sport mode indicator light		Snow mode indicator
	Driving power limit warning light		LDA off indicator

	ACC fault indicator		Function Safety indicator
	Rear fog light indicator		LSS fault warning light
	Headlight fault warning light		BSD fault warning light
	Main alarm indicator		ABS fault warning light
	Tire pressure fault warning light		ESC OFF warning light
	ESC fault warning light		AVAS OFF indicator
	Smart key warning light		ELKA fault indicator
	ELKA off indicator		AEB off indicator
	AEB / FCW fault indicator		EPB indicator
	Steering system fault warning light		TSR indicator (speed limit)
	FCW pre-warning/ Emergency warning indicator: AEB indicator		Low-voltage power system fault warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	Coolant overheating warning light		Charging connection indicator

	Powertrain fault warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light
	Airbag fault warning light		Motor fault warning light
	Motor overheating warning light		Parking brake system fault warning light
	Door status indicator		TSR indicator

Warning Lights/Indicators Description



Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when the START/STOP button is pressed, the warning light will light up for a few seconds, a beep will be heard, and a "Key not detected" message will be displayed.
- If you carry the electronic smart key and press the START/STOP button, this warning light will not light up and the vehicle can be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



Antilock Braking System (ABS) fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.

- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
 - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
 - This warning light turns on during driving.



REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system

REMINDER

warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- The ABS has a self-check function. Any detected fault will cause the ABS indicator to light up on the instrument cluster. This means the ABS fails, but the brake can still function as that of an ordinary non-ABS vehicle. It is recommended to contact a professional from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator are on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you must drive under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly, and one or more values turn red on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is leaking rapidly.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
 - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
 - This warning light is steady on while driving.



REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for



REMINDER

the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.



CUTION

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, because ESC system is malfunctioned at this time and braking will cause instability.



Driving power limit warning light

When the power of the vehicle is limited, this indicator will come on. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.



Headlight fault warning light

- A yellow warning light means one failed headlight, while a red warning light means both have failed.
- When this indicator is on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Main alarm indicator

If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt on the instrument cluster.



ACC fault indicator

When this indicator is steady on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Seat belt reminder indicator

This warning light reminds the driver and the front passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either you or the front passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition switched on, this warning light turns on and then goes off in a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
- When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
- This warning light turns on during driving.



Parking system fault warning light

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.



REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.
- This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- The parking system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, during braking, the ABS

does not function, and the vehicle is unstable. Proceed with caution.

! REMINDER

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the drive motor is running, this light stays on even if the EPB is released. The brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly press the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.
- The brake system warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.



! Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

! REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the

! REMINDER

temperature protection will be activated and the steering system will be damaged or steering will become heavy.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
- To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.
- In cases where the low-voltage battery has low SOC.
- When the low-voltage battery voltage drops below the EPS working threshold of 9V, EPS will stop providing steering power. The low-voltage battery should therefore be inspected and charged or swapped if necessary.
- A dead motor may prevent the EPS system from working, so never turn off the motor during driving. If the motor dies while driving, hold on to the steering wheel, pull over immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

! REMINDER

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a DENZA



REMINDER

authorized dealer or service provider.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- It lights up when the DC system or low-voltage battery fails.
- Charging and discharging stop when this warning light turns on.
- When this warning light lights up and remain steady on while driving, the vehicle speed will be limited.
- This light is used to warn about the operating state of the DC module and the low-voltage battery module when the vehicle is not being charged or discharging.
- If this warning light turns on while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates that there is a problem with the DC system or the low-voltage power system.



Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
 - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
 - This warning light turns on during driving.



CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
 - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
 - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.



High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, this light will light up again. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light

system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
- This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.



Motor coolant overheating warning light

When this indicator is steady on, it indicates that the coolant temperature is too high. In that case, stop to cool down the vehicle. When the indicator flashes, it indicates the coolant level is low. Add coolant promptly.



AEB warning light (red)*

When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.



120 TSR indicator*

When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. In this case, check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Stop using remote driving for your safety.	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine accessories are faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system*	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV power limited	The EV function is limited. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately for a check.

	Please check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the PCW system*	The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The AEB function is limited*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the BSD system*	The BSD system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The BSD function is limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the multi-purpose camera*	The multi-purpose camera is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited*	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Intelligent-camera is not available due to poor condition*	The intelligent camera is unavailable. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment.	The solenoid valve is cleaning, please park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the LDWS*	The LDW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the LKS*	The lane keeping system (LKS) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

	The LKS function is limited.*	The LKS function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check HDC system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	IMU not calibrated*	This indicates the active suspension is not calibrated, which may affect your driving experience. Please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Clutch temperature is high, pull over for cooling.	Indicates that the clutch temperature is too high, please park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

03

CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....	52
Seat.....	67
Steering Wheel.....	75
Wipers.....	78
Side Mirror.....	81
Switches.....	83

Doors and Keys

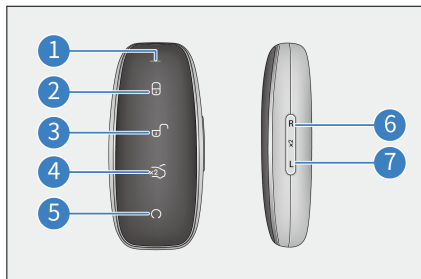
Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth key and NFC key.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the microswitch on the front door handle, while carrying the correct smart key, to unlock or lock all doors. When the vehicle is locked, press the microswitch on the rear door handle, while carrying the correct smart key, to unlock the vehicle and open the corresponding power sliding door. Press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open/close the trunk, start/stop the vehicle remotely, or open/close the sliding doors.

- ① Indicator
- ② Lock button
- ③ Unlock button
- ④ Trunk open/close button
- ⑤ Start/Stop button
- ⑥ Right sliding door open/close button
- ⑦ Left sliding door open/close button



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
 - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
 - Do not disassemble the smart key without authorization.
 - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
 - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
 - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
 - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
- You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. For details,

**CAUTION**

contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
 - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
 - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not generate harmful interference to legal radio communication services when using the smart key. Once any interference is found, stop using the smart key immediately, and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from

**CAUTION**

interference of all radio services or from radiation of devices for industrial, scientific and medical applications.

- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

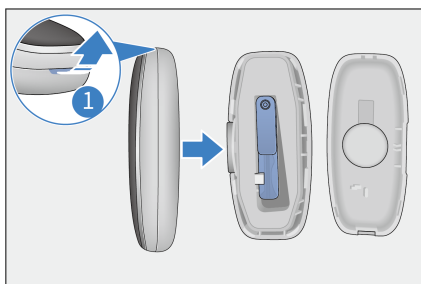
Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. When the key is not used, be sure to insert the mechanical key back into the smart key and close its back cover.

Taking out the mechanical key

Select a suitable tool and insert it into the square groove at the end of the smart key in the direction of arrow ①. Open the back cover of the key with upward force

and take out the mechanical key from the back cover.



- Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Bluetooth Digital Key

Bluetooth Digital Key*

- Use the BYD key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- Download and install the latest BYD App version in the application market, and integrate BYD bluetooth key function internally.
- After the remote controlling being activated, bluetooth key will be activated automatically for the vehicles equipped with this feature.
- Turning on Bluetooth on the phone and approaching the vehicle to connect Bluetooth automatically. You can also connect the Bluetooth manually. After connection, the Bluetooth key can be used.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration.
- Choose items need to be performed, and issue commands to control them. Vehicles unlocked via Bluetooth have a one-time keyless start authorization within a certain period.

After successfully starting the vehicle by pressing the vehicle's start button, the driver can shift into gear and drive. If the time limit is exceeded or other operations are performed, the keyless start authorization will be invalidated. The authorization can be reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked via Bluetooth again.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the environment conditions and phone performance, the effective distance of the key is reduced in densely populated vehicle areas.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

NFC Key Card

The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.

- Hold your NFC card close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock the vehicle.

- Get into the vehicle, place the card at the NFC sign to authorize the vehicle start.



CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
 - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charging area in the vehicle (see **P197**).
 - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may block electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
 - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
 - Do not bend the card with force.
 - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer for blocking of the lost card and configuration of a new card.

NFC Digital Key

- NFC digital key is a function provided by BYD for users. You can register mobile phones* as vehicle keys to unlock, lock and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, observe the following conditions:
 - Your vehicle has been authenticated in the BYD App.
 - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
 - Some mobile phones support NFC digital keys (consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for specific models).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

When all prerequisites of applying BYD digital key are met, the NFC Digital Key could be activated in BYD App and Settings.

- BYD App: Download BYD App in App Store, then register and log in to the app. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.
- Settings: You could go to “Vehicle→Locks” and find the digital key, please take the key while entering the vehicle so as to verify your ownership, tap the “activate it now”, enter the pairing code as prompted and activate it following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

When using the NFC digital key, enable the NFC function of the mobile phone. Usage:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle (consult the

manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area).

- Get into the vehicle, place the mobile phone or wearable device at the NFC sign, depress the brake pedal, and then press Start or Stop button to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- After authorization with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly. If the vehicle is not started in time, place the mobile phone or wearable device at the NFC sign again to obtain the permission.

Removing the NFC digital key

Open the BYD app, navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to be removed, and enter the password to remove it.

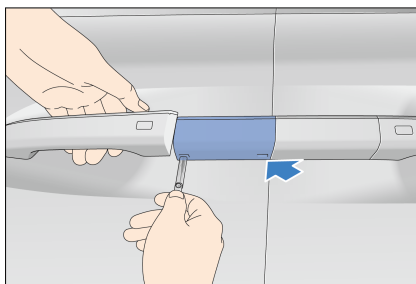
Change NFC digital key

You could choose “Replacing the key” in the infotainment touchscreen or tap “Move to this phone” in the BYD app, after the replacing, reactivate the phone following the instructions.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

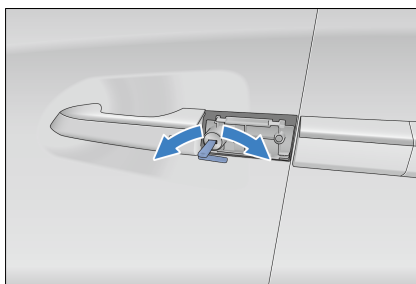
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

1. Pull the driver's door handle, insert the mechanical key into the grooves respectively as shown, and pry the snap upward with a little force to open the lock hole cover.



2. Release the handle, insert the key into the key hole on the driver's door handle, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.



CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

⚠ CAUTION

- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection locks are disabled.

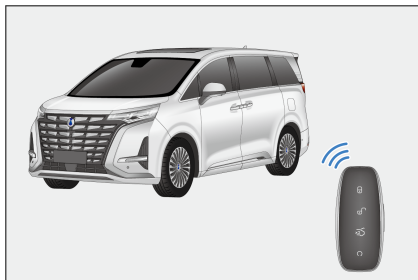
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking: 🔒

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all

doors simultaneously. If the vehicle is powered off, the side mirrors will fold (Auto-Fold is enabled on the ⚙ infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle Settings** → **Comfortable Use** → **Side Mirror** → **Auto Fold**) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the turn signals will not flash, and the horn will sound once.

Unlocking: 🔓

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (the DOOR function can be activated) will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- When the vehicle is in anti-theft mode, press the lock button. The vehicle sounds a long beep and turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
 - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
 - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key unlock/lock/closing window functions, go to  infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Locks**. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

WARNING

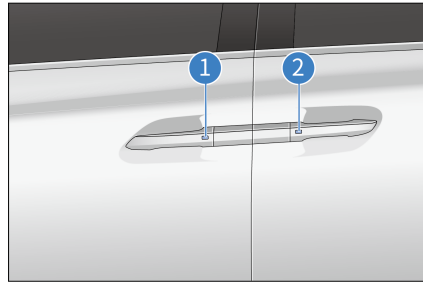
- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All the doors are locked. If the vehicle is powered off, the side mirrors

will fold (Go to  infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use** → **Side Mirror Auto Fold**) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch ① on the front door handle while carrying the smart key into the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- When doors are locked, press the microswitch ② on the sliding door handle while carrying the valid smart key. All doors unlock, the sliding door on the corresponding side opens completely, and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
 - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.

- The smart key is left in the vehicle.

! REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows. (To enable or disable this function, go to the  infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Locks**.)

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

Opening/Closing the trunk with smart key

- Double-click the trunk opening button on the smart key, and the turn signals will flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the trunk.



! REMINDER

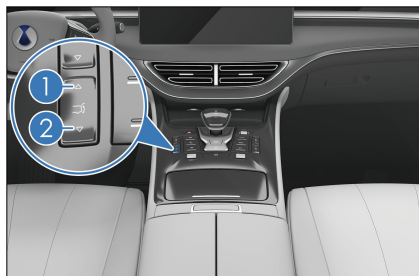
- If the trunk release button is pressed again while the lid is in

! REMINDER

motion, it will stop at its current position.

Opening/Closing the trunk from inside the vehicle*

- When the trunk lid is closed, press the switch ①, and there are three situations:
 1. Unlock the vehicle, and the lid will automatically unlock and open to the set height (maximum height by default).
 2. With vehicle locked and powered off, no operation is made on the trunk lid.
 3. When the vehicle is locked and powered on, a reminder is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen if no operation is made on the trunk lid. You can confirm whether to open the trunk on the screen.



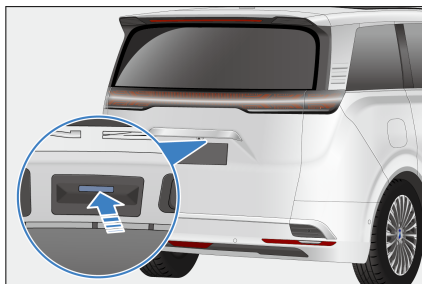
- While the trunk lid is opening, pull this switch ① again to freeze it in place.
- When the trunk is open, press the switch ②, the lid closes automatically.
- While the trunk lid is closing, press this switch ② again to freeze it in place.

! REMINDER

- If the vehicle speed is greater than 0.5 km/h, pressing ① button is useless.

Opening the trunk with exterior switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the exterior trunk switch to open the trunk.
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with the smart key and press the exterior switch to open the trunk.

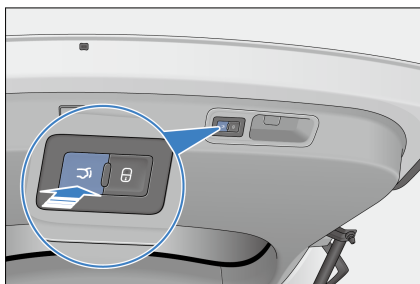


! REMINDER

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

Closing the trunk automatically*

- When the trunk lid is open and stationary, press this button to close the lid.
- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. Press this button again to have the lid move in the opposite direction.



Vehicle lock button*

- When the ignition is off and the trunk is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the trunk, locks the entire vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

Closing the trunk manually*

- When the vehicle is unlocked, the trunk can be closed manually.

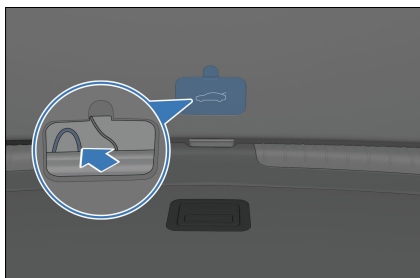


CAUTION

- Before closing the trunk electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking

- There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the trunk lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the trunk in an emergency.



! REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside with the emergency cable latch.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See **P87** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

! REMINDER

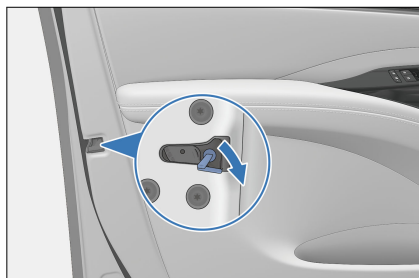
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and move down the slider with the mechanical key as shown. You can then lock the doors by closing the them.



3. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See **P56** in this Chapter.)
5. Release the handle and close the driver's door.
6. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.

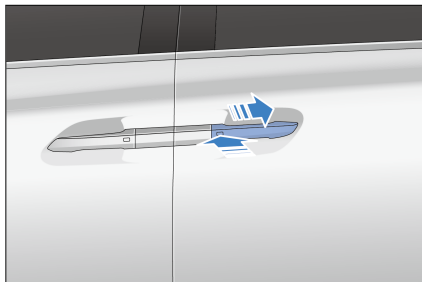
3. Release the door handle and pull it again to open the driver's door.
4. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

Power Sliding Doors

Opening/Closing the Sliding Door from Outside

The vehicle is unlocked with the anti-theft alarm system disarmed:

- Press the microswitch on the power sliding door to open/close it.
- Pull the door handle to open/close the power sliding door.



Opening/Closing the sliding door with smart key

- When the sliding doors are closed, double-press the sliding door opening/closing button on the smart key, and the door on the corresponding side opens.
- When the sliding doors are open, double-press the sliding door opening/closing button on the smart key, and the door on the corresponding side closes.

! REMINDER

- When the sliding doors stop, double-press the sliding door button on the key, and the doors

! REMINDER

move in the opposite direction. When the doors are moving, press the button to stop them.

- When the sliding doors are locked, press the microswitch when carrying the smart key to unlock all doors and open the sliding doors.
- When the sliding doors are unlocked, press the microswitch without the smart key to open the sliding doors.
- When the sliding doors are moving, pressing the microswitch stops the doors. Press it again or pull the handle, the doors move in the opposite direction.
- The sliding doors cannot open completely when part of the window (>20%) has been rolled down.

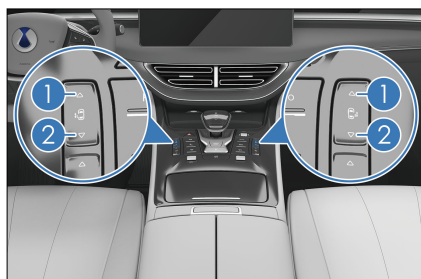
Opening/Closing the Sliding Door from Inside

Opening/Closing the power sliding door

- The sliding door power switch buttons are on the auxiliary dashboard. The left button controls the opening/closing of the left sliding door; the right button controls the opening/closing of the right sliding door.

The vehicle is unlocked with the anti-theft alarm system disarmed:

- Press the sliding door switch ② on the gearshift panel, and the door opens automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to open or close the sliding door.



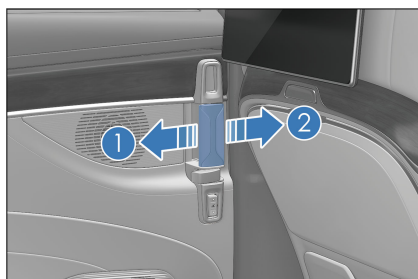
- Press the sliding door switch ① on the gearshift panel, and the door closes automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to continue opening or closing.

CAUTION

- When the sliding door is opening/closing automatically, the motor may stop running in case of strong signal interference. After leaving the interference environment, use the door handle to close the sliding door, and the vehicle resumes the automatic operations after locating the door.

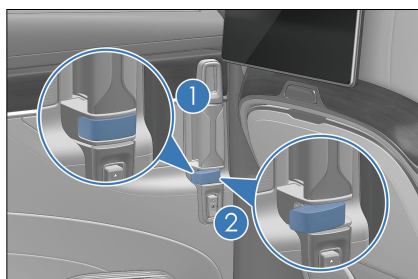
Interior door handle

- Operate the door handle in the direction of ① to open the power sliding door.
- Operate the door handle in the direction of ② to close the power sliding door.
- When the sliding doors are moving, operate the door handle to stop the door.



Sliding door locking block

- Move the sliding block on the inside of the side door like ①, and the sliding door will be locked. At this time, the gray part of the block faces outward, and the door cannot be opened with the interior door handle and the button on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Move the sliding block on the inside of the side door like ②, and the sliding door will be unlocked. At this time, the red part of the block faces outward, and the door can be opened with the power switch, the interior door handle, and the button on the infotainment touchscreen.



Dynamic protection of the power sliding door

Anti-pinch function

- During closing, if the sliding door detects an obstacle which interferes with the closing, the anti-pinch function will be triggered with speaker

alarms, and the sliding door will stop and move backward by 10 cm.

- During opening, if the sliding door detects an obstacle which interferes with the opening, the anti-pinch function will be triggered with speaker alarms, and the sliding door will close slightly and then stop.

Dynamic protection of the sliding door

- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h, the sliding door cannot continue to open, but can only close, and the speaker gives a short alarm.
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h and the sliding door is not completely closed, the speaker continuously gives alarms to remind you to close the door.

! REMINDER

- When the charge port door/fuel filler cap is opened, the sliding door of the corresponding side fails to move automatically and can be opened/closed manually. When opening the sliding door manually, the mechanical block will prevent the door from being completely opened to avoid interference with the charge port/fuel filler cap. When the charge port door/fuel filler cap is closed, the sliding door of the corresponding side resumes its automatic operation.
- When the sliding door is locked, its automatic opening and closing function will be disabled.
- When function is disabled, the corresponding power-assisted attraction function will be retained. When the sliding door is half closed, the power attraction function is still triggered to ensure

! REMINDER

the complete closing of the sliding door.

- Do not switch the power sliding door on/off on the ramp to prevent accidents caused by the sudden loss of power of the sliding door. If it happens, to avoid the danger caused by sudden movement of the sliding door, the speed protection mode will be activated until the door is fully opened/closed.
- If you want to open the sliding door, it can only be closed and locked with attraction with the vehicle locked.
- When the sliding door is opened/closed, or the anti-pinch function is enabled, the speaker gives alarms.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (see **P57** for details in this chapter).

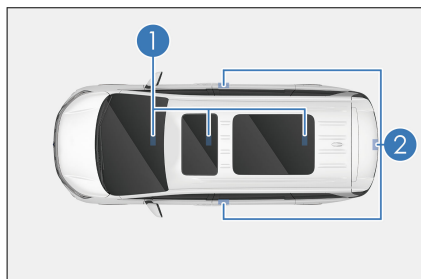
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see **P123** for details).

Antenna Positions

- ① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna

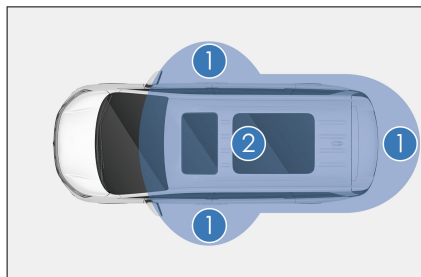
**Active Area**

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

**! REMINDER**

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers,

! REMINDER

power stations, and broadcasting stations.

- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.
- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
 - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the information display screen in

the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out.

- The engine is started repeatedly in a short time. Please wait for 10 seconds and start the vehicle.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
 - TVs
 - PCs
 - Phone charger
 - Electroliers
 - Fluorescent desk lamps

Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

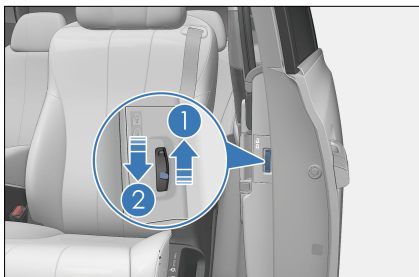
Activating the child protection lock

- Toggle the switch as the arrow② indicates to activate child protection lock, then the door cannot be opened

from inside the vehicle. Use the exterior door handle to open this door.

Deactivating the child protection lock

- Move the latch in the direction of arrow① to turn off the child protection lock. The door can be opened from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.
- After the child protection lock is locked, doors cannot be opened from inside the car, and the window switch for the corresponding rear door cannot be used to raise or lower the window.

Seat

Seat Precautions

When the vehicle is moving, all passengers in the vehicle must fasten their seat belts, and rest their backs upright against the seatback.

WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Sitting on a folded seatback or on cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in severe personal injury in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- It is prohibited to stand or move around the seats when driving, or passengers may get injured in case of emergency braking or a collision.

CAUTION

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are all within the driver's easy control.

REMINDER

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- After manually adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

REMINDER

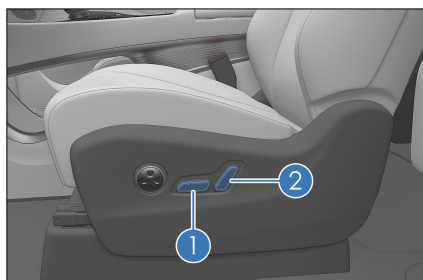
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets there. Be careful not to squeeze or hit children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space of yourself and other passengers around so as to avoid pinch injury.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seats with Power*

Power front seat adjustments include seat position, seating height*, seating* and seatback angles. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

- ① Seat position adjustment switch
 - Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.
 - Move the front end of the switch up or down to adjust the seat base angle.
 - Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust the height of the seat cushion.



② Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Toggle the seatback angle adjustment switch front and back to adjust the seat back angle.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- To avoid contact with the roof or sun visor, do not move the front seats too far forward.
- If the left seat in the second-row is moved to the most front position, the adjustment of the driver's seat will be limited for the reason that it is requested to ensure the enough safe place for the passengers sitting at this position, the system will judge the relative position of it.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support*

The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine.

- Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
- Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.



Front passenger seat adjustment by second-row seat passengers*

- With the ignition on, adjust the front passenger seat on the seat armrest screen.

REMINDER

- With the vehicle powered on, the second-row armrest screens do not light up automatically. Touch the screens twice to wake them up.
- To adjust the seat, select the target seat on the screen.

Memory System*

Memory switch position

- The memory system switch is located on the infotainment touchscreen. Two driving positions can be recorded into memory.

Setting function

- Memory setting conditions
 - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
 - The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
 - No actions are performed by the seats and side mirrors.

Memory setting method

- Memory setting in OK mode
 - Press and hold either "1" or "2" on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded, and the memory setting finishes.



REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- With the gearshift lever in the "P" position, the driver's seat and side mirrors memory systems will perform memory wake-up when the memory system switch is pressed if the following conditions are met:
 - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
 - The vehicle speed is zero.
 - Memory switch signals are valid.
 - No actions are performed by the seats and side mirrors.
- You can interrupt the current memory wake-up operation by the following ways:
 - Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
 - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.



WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.



WARNING

- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Automatic driver seat

- Automatic back
 - This feature moves the seat (if positioned close to the front stop) rearward by a certain distance when you unlock with the smart key and open the driver's door. This allows for some room for entry.
 - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Auto forward
 - The seat returns to its last position when the ignition is turned from off to on and the driver's door closes, if the seat has not been horizontally adjusted after auto rearward triggered upon the last power-off and door opening.
 - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- User settings
 - To enable or disable the automatic driver seat, go to  → infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle Settings** → **Comfortable Use**.
 - The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the

driver's door while the seat is moving backward or by opening the driver's door while the seat is moving forward.

Adjusting Second-Row Seats

Second-row seat adjustment includes position adjustment, seatback angle adjustment, lumbar support adjustment*, massage adjustment*, and leg support adjustment*. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

1. Seat position adjustment switch

- Tap the position adjustment button on the seat armrest screen to move the seat backward or forward.

2. Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Tap the seatback angle adjustment button on the seat armrest screen to adjust the seatback angle.

3. Adjusting the Lumbar Support*

The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine. To allow you and your occupants to sit in the seats in a correct and relaxed manner, the seat support should support the occupants' lumbar spine.

- Tap the lumbar support adjustment button on the seat armrest screen to increase or decrease the curvature.
- Tap the lumbar support adjustment button on the seat armrest screen to extend the curvature up or down.

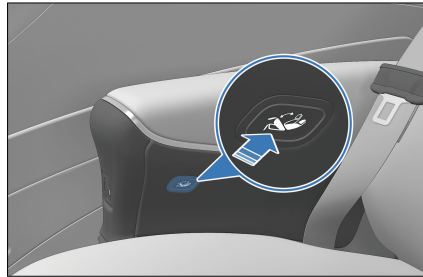
4. Seat massage*

Tap the massage button on the seat armrest screen to start or stop the massage.

5. Leg support adjustment*

The leg support can be adjusted to the proper position on the seat armrest screen.

- Reset
 - Press the seat side buttons to return the seatback and leg support to their original angles.



Heating and Ventilation System*

The front and second row seats are equipped with seat heating and ventilation systems. To turn on or off the systems, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut page, or go to the A/C operation interface.

Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat heating controls to set seat heaters to level: high and low temperature.
- The heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.
- Press the switch first. The seat heater works in the high-temperature mode, and the two heating indicators light up at the same time.
- Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The seat heater works in the low-temperature mode, the first indicator lights up, and the second indicator goes out.

- Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The heating is deactivated, and both indicators go out.

Ventilation adjustment

- Seat ventilation: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat ventilation controls to select a ventilation mode: Strong and weak ventilation.
- The ventilation indicator is off by default after each power-on.
- Press the switch first. The ventilation fan works at a high speed, and two ventilation indicators light up.
- Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The ventilation fan works at a low speed, the first indicator lights up, and the second indicator goes out.
- Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The ventilation is deactivated, and both indicators go out.

Ventilator and heater cannot be turned on at the same time.

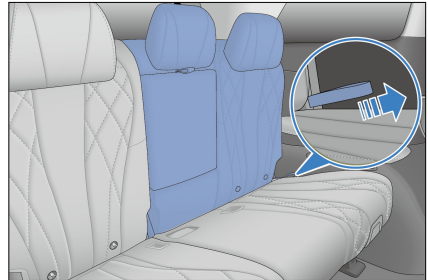
- Tap the ventilation icon to make the fan work; if the heating function is then enabled, the fan will stop working and the heater will start to work.
- Tap the heating icon to make the heater work; if the ventilation function is then enabled, the heater will stop working and the fan will start to work.

Adjusting Rear Seats

Adjusting seatback angle

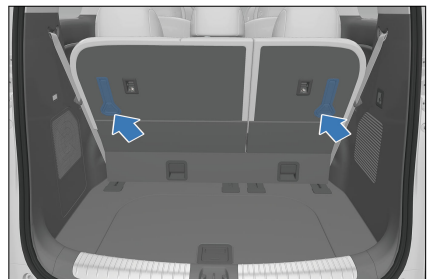
- Passengers can adjust the the seatback angle through the cord on the seat side.

- Pull up the seat side adjustment cord, and lean back or forward to adjust the seatback angle. Release it when you have found the desired position.



Folding the seatback flat

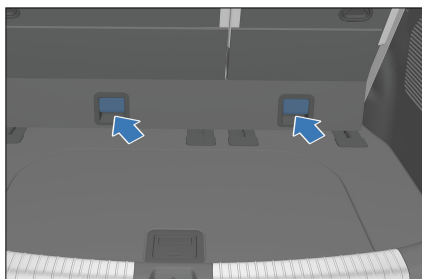
- Straighten the seatback and pull the handle of the cord to unlock the seatback.
- Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).



Adjusting forward and backwards

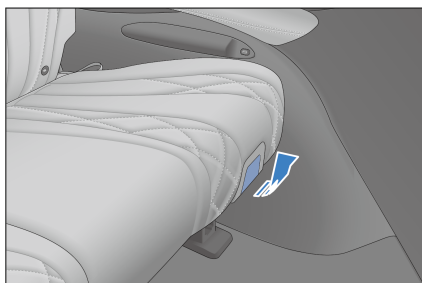
Method One

- Adjustment handles are behind the seat.
- Open the trunk lid to adjust seat position with the handle.



Method Two

- Move the adjustment handle on the front side of the seat to adjust seat position.



CAUTION

- Pay attention to the followings when folding the seats:
 - Do not put the seatback down with the vehicle running.
 - Do not fold the seats with the vehicle running.
 - Occupants should be careful when accessing the third-row seats to avoid hitting feet.
 - Make sure the second-row seats are fully locked before driving.
- The seatback adjustment handle and folding cord cannot be operated at the same time. Straighten the seatback and

CAUTION

reset the cord if there is a mis-operation.

Head Supports

Adjusting Front-Seat Head Supports

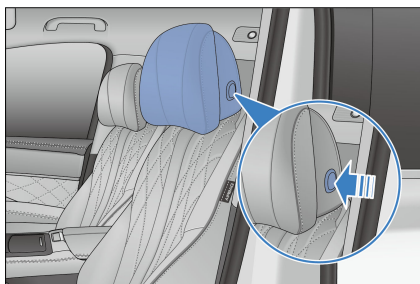
Adjusting Front-Seat Head Supports*

1. Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

2. Lowering a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



Removing front-seat head supports*

- Configuration 1*

1. Removing a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.

2. Installing a head support

Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing

forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

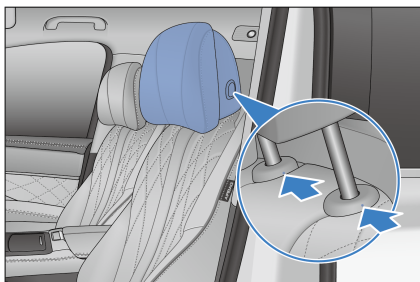
- Configuration 2*

1. Lifting a head support

Hold the adjustment button on the left and raises the head support to the topmost position.

2. Unlocking one post

Keep holding the adjustment button, and use a needle whose diameter is slightly less than 2 mm against the small round hole of plastic trim cover under the head support. Then, pull up one rod until the rod slot is exposed.



3. Unlocking the other post

Repeat step two to unlock the other rod.

4. Removing a head support

Pull the head support upward until it is fully detached from the seatback.

Adjusting head support flanks*

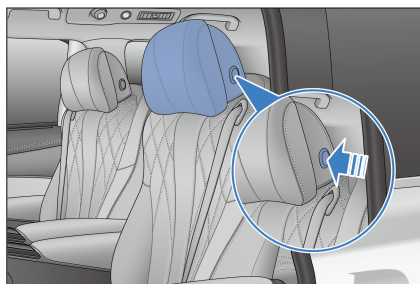
- Move the head support flanks manually to adjust their the wrapping, so that the head support fits the head better, thus increasing comfort. Press the flanks to restore them to their original state when not in use.

Adjusting Rear-Seat Head Supports

Adjusting second-row seat head supports

The middle-row headrest offers height, forward-backward, and flanks adjustment, but it cannot be removed.

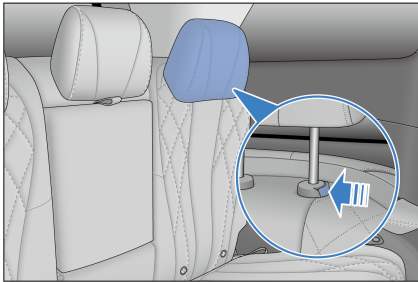
- Lifting a head support
 - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
 - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Angle adjustment
 - Move the lower head support up to adjust the support forward and backward, so that the head support fits the head better, thus increasing comfort. Adjust the head support forward to its limit position when not in use, and it will return to the original state.
- Flank angle adjustment
 - The way to adjust the flank angle of second-row head supports is the same as that of the front-seat head supports.

Adjusting a third-row seat head support

- Lifting a head support
 - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
 - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly raise the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support
 - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support
 - Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing

forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

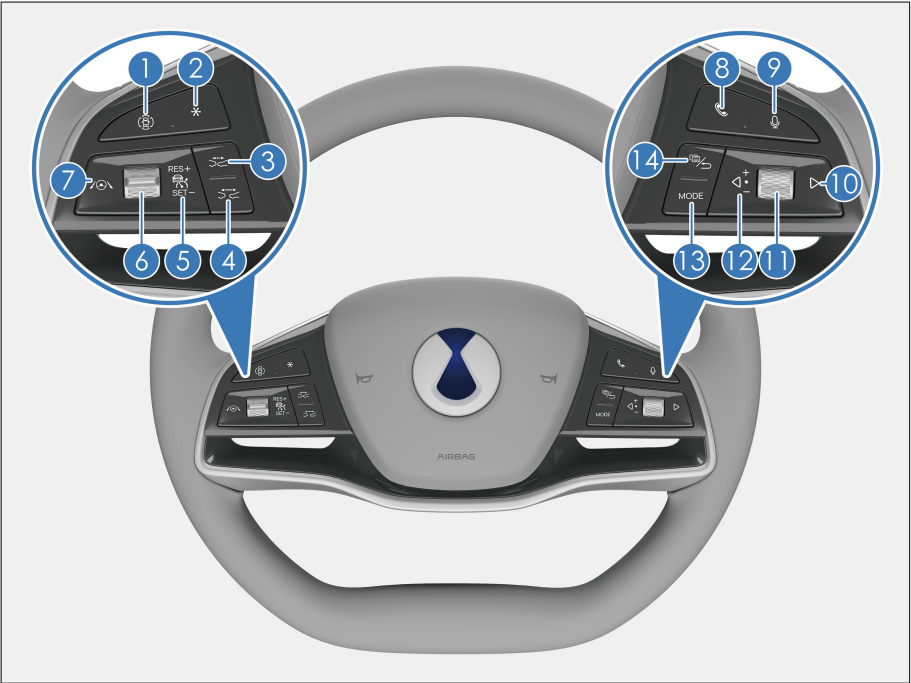
! REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



- | | | | |
|---|--------------|----|---------------------------|
| 1 | AVM | 8 | Call |
| 2 | Custom | 9 | Speech recognition button |
| 3 | Distance - | 10 | Right |
| 4 | Distance + | 11 | Scroll button |
| 5 | ACC button | 12 | Left |
| 6 | Reset+/Set-* | 13 | Mode button |
| 7 | ICC | 14 | Instrument cluster/Back |

The audio control switch is accessible when the ignition is switched on.

Left-hand buttons

- ACC button
- Turns the ACC system on or off.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see **P139**.

Reset/Speed+*

- Activates the Adaptive Cruise Control(ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.

Set/Speed-*

- Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance -

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one notch when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four notches are available.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

ICC

- Double-click or single-click to turn the ICC on or off.

Around View Monitor (AVM)*

- Turns on/off AVM.

Custom

- Press the button to take pictures automatically on the infotainment touchscreen.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
- Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-

operational when the volume reaches the highest.

- Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
- Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
- Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
- Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
- Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

REMINDER

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right

1. Infotainment system

- In radio mode:
- Press the ◀ button to play the previous radio station.
- Press the ▶ button to play the next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in Universal Serial Bus(USB)/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
- Press the ◀ button to play the previous track (track number -1).

- Press the ◀ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- Press the ▶ button to play the next track (track number +1).
- Press the ▶ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

2. Instrument cluster

- In the menu mode:
 - Press the ◀ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the left.
 - Press the ▶ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Call

- Dial/Answer (The audio system is muted after pressing the button.)
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the Dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the Call Log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice recognition screen.

- After exiting the DENZA Assistant, press this button again to re-enter a voice command.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Mode button

- Selecting a mode: Press the Mode button to switch between media apps, peripherals, and pre-installed third-party audio/video apps.
 - If speakers are turned off, press this button to turn them on and enter the memory playback mode, or switch to the radio mode if there is no playback source (for example, no external audio equipment) in the memory playback mode.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.



CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.



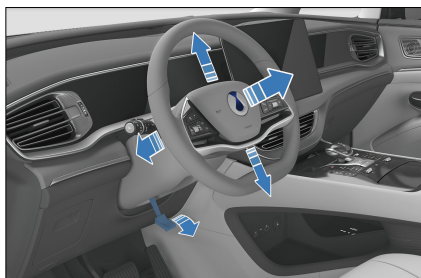
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- Choose Comfort/Sport steering mode by going to the infotainment touchscreen  → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis** → **Steering Mode**.

REMINDER

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when

REMINDER

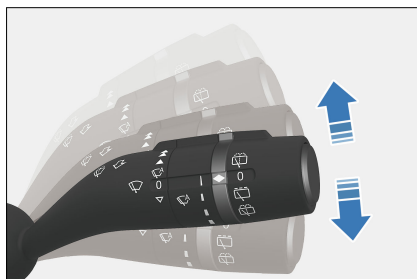
the vehicle is running at a high speed.

Wipers

Wiper Switch

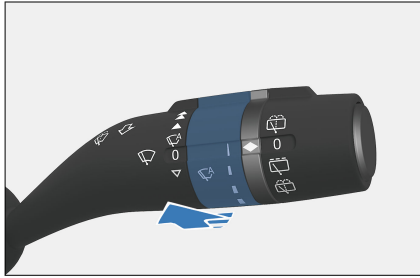
Front Windshield Wipers and Washer

- The lever is used to control the windshield wipers and washer. It has five modes:
 -  : Fast
 -  : Slow
 -  : Auto Wipers/Intermittent
 -  : Off
 -  : Point-wiping



- Push up or pull down the paddle to select a mode.
- In slow and fast modes, the wipers operates continuously.
- Pulling down the lever from the  position activates the point-wiping mode . The wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever.

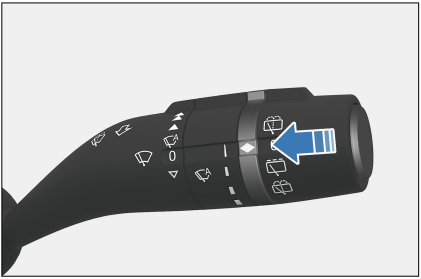
- Push the wiper switch lever to , the wipers wipe once, and enter the automatic mode. The wipers work automatically based on the rainfall.
- In the auto wiper mode , you can change the sensitivity according to your habits. Turn the adjustment knob on the wiper switch to decrease the sensitivity as the rain bar narrows.



- Enable or disable the auto wiper by going to the  infotainment touchscreen→ **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use** → **Auto Wiper**. The wipers enter the intermittent mode after the automatic mode is deactivated. Turn the sensitivity adjustment knob to determine the wiping intervals. The narrower the rain bar, the longer the intervals.

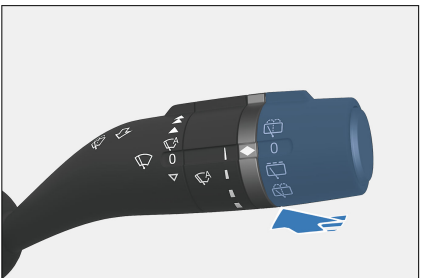
Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, pull the switch lever backward (towards the steering wheel) so that the washer sprays washing fluid and the wipers operate.
- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 1-2 cycles.

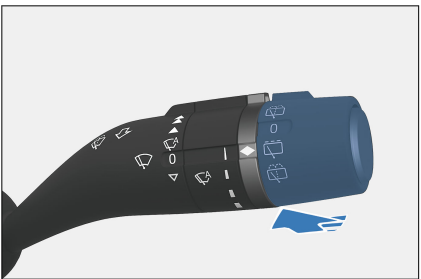


Rear Windshield Wiper and Washer

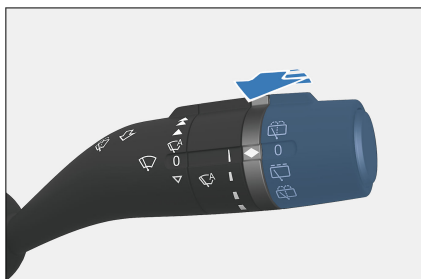
- Set the wiper switch to  to activate the rear windshield wiper; set it to  or open the trunk to stop the wiper.



- Set the wiper switch to  to activate the rear windshield wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Set the wiper switch to  and release it. The wiper will operate once or twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.



Link between rear wiper and trunk

- The wiper/washer won't work with the trunk opened and the vehicle powered on. If the wiper is working and the trunk is opened, it will stop and resume operation five seconds after the trunk is closed. If the front wiper is operating and the gear is shifted to "R", the rear wiper will operate intermittently.

CAUTION

- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

REMINDER

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windshield cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.

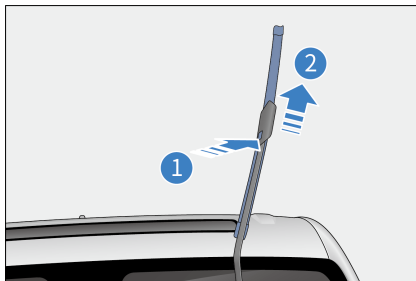
Replacing Wiper Blades

Replacing Wiper Blades

- Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclear after wiping.
- When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front/rear wiper check function on the infotainment touchscreen → Service → Overhaul. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

Replacing front wiper

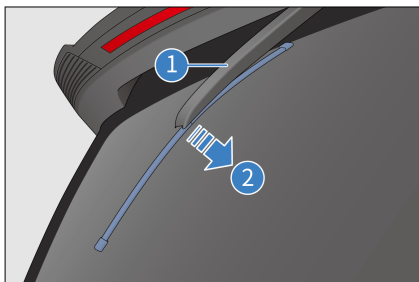
1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button .
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction .
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing rear wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position , and pull the blade out vertically along the indicated direction .

3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

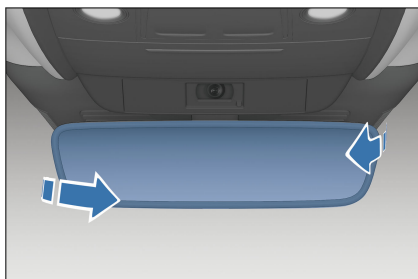
- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- When replacing the wiper blade, after raising the wiper arm, hold it steady and gently lower it after replacing the wiper blade. Otherwise, before the wiper blade is installed, any external force could make the wiper arm snap back on the glass and risk breaking it.

For wiper blade maintenance, see **P232**.

Side Mirror

Interior Rearview Mirror

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

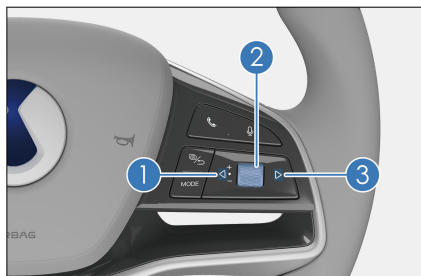
Streaming Rearview Mirror*

There are two working modes of streaming media rearview mirror: streaming media and traditional interior rearview mirror.

Streaming media mode

- Enable or disable streaming media rearview mirror by switch (on the back of the rearview mirror) or on the infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Streaming rearview mirror**.
- When enabled, real-time images captured by the rear camera can be displayed on the streaming rearview mirror screen, open screen adjustment on the infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Streaming rearview mirror** and adjust the view height, screen luminance and image size by the right

button ① and ③ on the steering wheel and adjust the gear by the scroll button ②.



! REMINDER

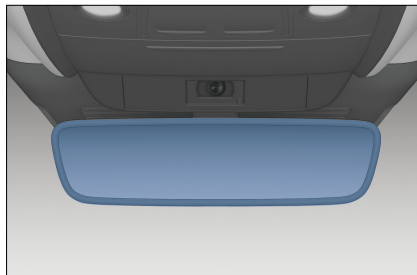
- The infotainment touchscreen is only used as a prompt, and the streaming media rearview mirror cannot be adjusted on it. Please use the button on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the streaming rearview mirror according to the prompt information on the infotainment system.
- Since the interior rearview mirror includes a traditional flat mirror function, the mirror effect and the streaming media image may appear simultaneously in strong light conditions, causing a ghosting phenomenon. In this case, manually adjust the interior rearview mirror angle to avoid ghosting and improve the visual field effect.

Rearview mirror mode

- When the streaming mode is turned off, the rearview mirror enters the rearview mirror mode. In this mode, the rearview mirror presents the mirror effect.

Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

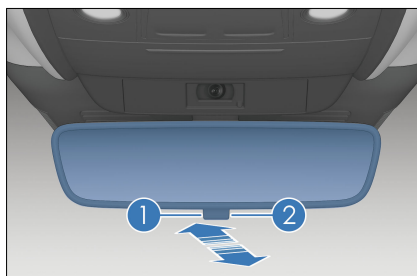
The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.



Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

Interior rearview mirror has two working modes: normal mode and anti-glare mode.

- Normal mode: Rotate the control lever to ① to get the clearest mirror image.



- Anti-glare mode: Rotate the control lever to ② to effectively reduce interference from headlights of rear vehicles at night. Note that anti-glare may lower the clarity of rear visual field.

Side Mirrors

Side Mirror Adjustment

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle using.

- Side mirror selection buttons: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
 -  : Left side mirror button
 -  : Right side mirror button
- Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons  : adjusts the side mirrors to a proper position.



WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

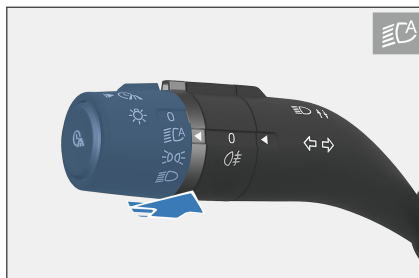
REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Switches

Light Switches

Set the light switch to  to turn off all lights except for daytime running lights. When the daytime light feature is enabled, the daytime running lights are on; and when this feature is disabled, the daytime running lights turn off.



Auto lights

Set the light switch to . The body control module (BCM) captures the brightness data from the light intensity sensor to automatically turn the position lights and low beam on or off.



REMINDER

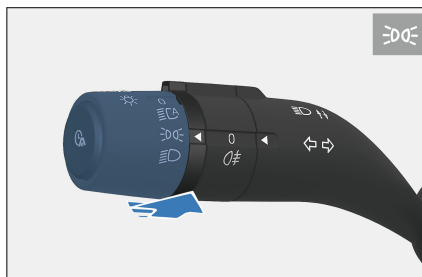
- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the

! REMINDER

windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Position lights

Set the light switch to  to turn on the front and rear position lights and the license plate light.



Low beam

Set the light switch to  to turn on the low beam.



Rear fog lights

Set the light switch to  and rotate the fog light dial to  to turn on rear fog lights.



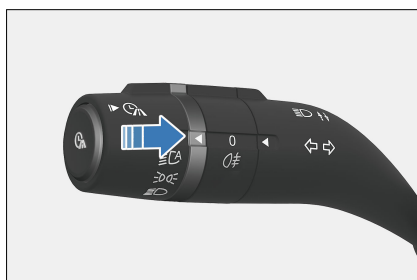
High beam

Set the light switch to  and push the light switch lever down (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam.



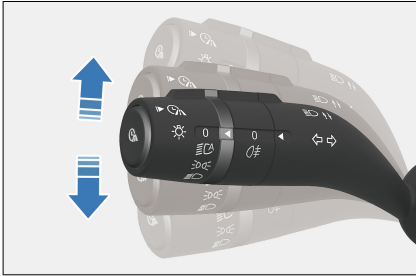
Overtaking light

Pull up the lever (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset. The overtaking light turns off.



Turn signals

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.



CAUTION

- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the handle is released. They will turn off after the vehicle goes around the bend. Depending on the driver's habit, the turn signal will reset after the vehicle turns around under some extreme conditions.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: To activate this function, set the light switch to  or  and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.

- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the light in 10 minutes.

Advanced turn-on/delayed turn-off (Follow me home) of headlights and the dynamic greeting functions*

- Off delay:
 - With the combination switch set to , , or , when you power off and lock the vehicle, off delay is first activated (the corresponding light staying on for 10 seconds or the set duration) to illuminate your exit, then the courtesy animation. The headlights go off after that.
- Entry lighting:
 - When the combination switch is turned to "" , "" or "" and you approach and unlock the vehicle to execute the "Follow me home" function, corresponding lights will light up for 10s (or a set time).

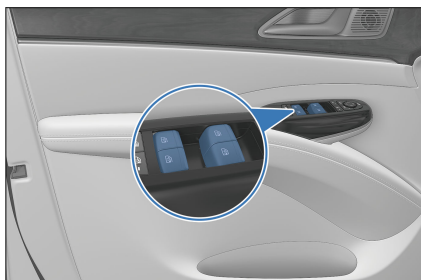
CAUTION

- You can change the duration for off delay and Entry lighting, 10 seconds by default, on the infotainment touchscreen.
- The courtesy animation only works when the trunk, hood, and four doors are closed.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, all the window switches can roll up or down the window. After the vehicle is powered OFF, no power windows can be regulated.
- The window control switch at the driver's side contains four buttons to roll up or down windows on four doors, respectively.
 - Press a switch to roll the window down.
 - Pull a switch to roll the window up.
- While using the switch, release it to stop window halfway.



- Rolling down: Press a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls down automatically.

- Rolling up: Pull a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls up automatically.
- To stop the window halfway, gently push the switch in the opposite direction.

Delay function*

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a 10min delay period. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down.
- If a front door is opened, the window switches won't work.

WARNING

- Before closing a power window, ensure occupants' hands are not placed upon the window glass; pinching of hands or fingers can result in serious injuries.

Anti-pinch Function

Anti-pinch function

If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops closing immediately, rolls down for a certain distance, and stops.

Initialization of anti-pinch function

- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, both the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions cease to work.
- Press the switch to close the window, release the switch, operate the switch and hold it for at least three seconds, and the anti-pinch function is recovered.

! WARNING

Please follow the precautions below to prevent serious injury or death from window closing:

- Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

! CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

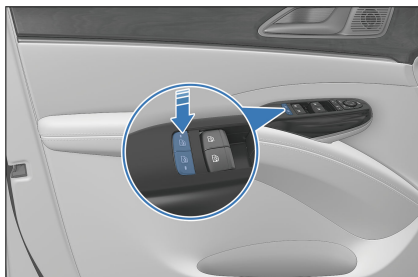
Window Lock Button

Press the switch to control the window switches of side doors.

- Press the left button, and the indicator turns on. Only the left front switches can be used to open/close four windows; the right front window switch can be used to open/close the window; the left window switch cannot be used to open/close the window,

and the right window switch is not limited.

- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.
- The operation of the right window lock button is the same as that of the left window.



Central Locking

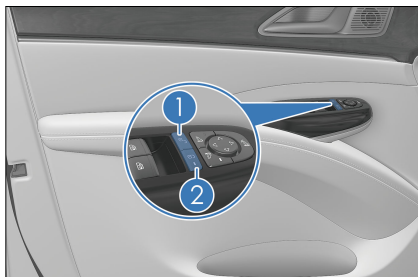
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlock

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

② Locking

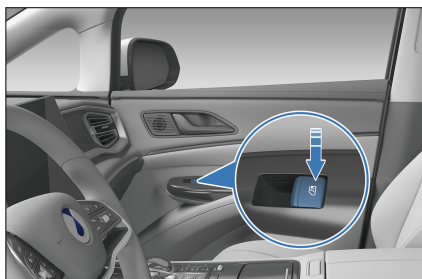
Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

- When the ignition is on, use the front right door window switch to operate the corresponding window.



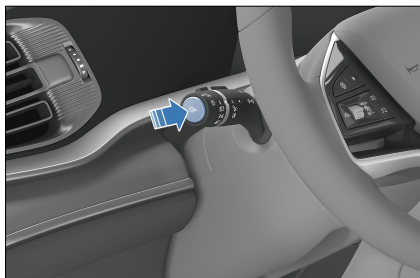
- When the ignition is on, use the left/right sliding door window switch to operate the respective windows.



Odometer Switch

- Press the odometer switch to switch between "Total Mileage" - "Mileage 1" - "Mileage 2" - "Total Mileage". The switching status is displayed accordingly on the instrument cluster.

- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.

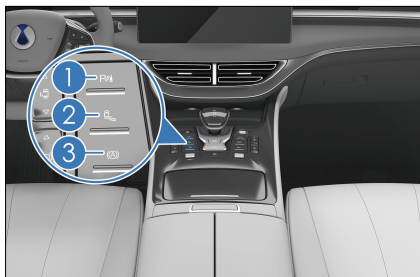


Driver Assistance Switches

The center console also features a reversing radar switch*, automatic parking switch*, and AVH switch*.

① Parking radar switch

Press this switch to activate parking radar. See **P177** for details.



② BSD switch

Press this switch to activate blind spot detection. (See **P163** for details)

③ AVH switch

Press this switch to activate automatic vehicle hold. See **P127** for details.

⚠ CAUTION

- Press the light character area on the button.
- Keep sharp objects away from the control panel as far as possible to avoid scratches.
- Pressing the button continually and quickly activates the anti-touch or anti-play mode. At this time, the occasional no response is normal. Stop the operation, and the function returns to normal immediately.

Automatic Window Closing*

The automatic window closing function can be enabled/disabled on the infotainment touchscreen.

Automatic window closing on rainy days

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle ignition is on, all windows close automatically if the wiper sensor senses a certain amount of rain.

The enabled function works only once, and then works again after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

High-speed automatic window closing

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle exceeds a certain speed, all windows close automatically.

Automatic window closing upon vehicle locking

- When the function is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen:

If the ignition is switched off, the driver's door is opened, and the hood, trunk, and all doors are closed, press

the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.

Automatic window closing by A/C

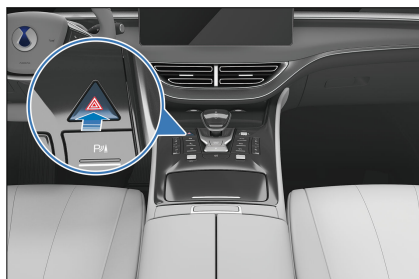
- When the fresh air mode is switched to circulation mode, the open window closes automatically.

Automatic Parking and Closing Windows

- When the ignition is on, the auto parking command will trigger the automatic closure of the windows.
- The windows could also be rolled up or down by commands from the voice assistant, the front infotainment touchscreen, armrest-screen and cloud service APP.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the  button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the  button is pressed again.



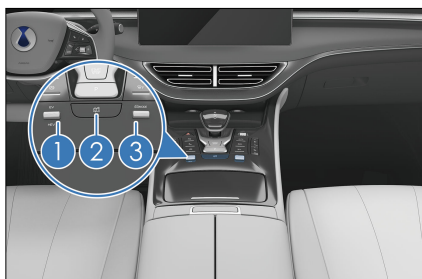
⚠ CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks.

Mode Switches

③ EV/HEV mode stick

- Toggle down the "EV/HEV" mode button, the vehicle is in dual modes, the default setting is the standard regenerative braking mode.
- Toggle up the "EV/HEV" mode button for three seconds to enter the MAX EV mode, and toggle up/down it again for three seconds to release the MAX EV mode.



② Snow mode button

- Press down the snow mode switch ② to put the vehicle in snow mode.
 - This mode is recommended on fairly strong surfaces covered in slippery materials such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel.
 - Although snow mode optimizes traction, driving performance, and maneuverability, it is recommended to avoid sudden acceleration or high speed.

③ Driving mode stick

- Available driving modes include economy, sports and normal. Using the stick, choose among the different modes shown on the cluster to suit your different needs.

CAUTION

- Because ESC activation limits the engine torque, momentarily deactivating ESC may help if the vehicle is stuck in deep snow. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal (see ESC operation instructions).

REMINDER

- During driving, if the vehicle is switched from ECO mode to SPORT mode, it will immediately supply more power than before to meet the driver's needs. Please pay attention to driving safety.

Refrigerator Door Switch Button

The refrigerator door switch button is on the auxiliary dashboard.

- Short press the refrigerator button ON② on the gearshift panel, and the refrigerator door opens automatically.
- Short press the refrigerator button OFF① on the gearshift panel, and the refrigerator door shuts automatically.



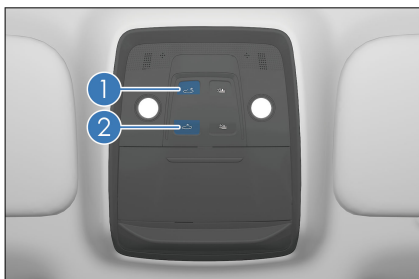
Sunroof Switch

Opening/Closing Sunroof

The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

Opening the sunroof

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to open the sunroof manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- If the sunroof has been initialized, pressing the sunroof open button ① and release it immediately, the sunroof tilts up for ventilation. Pressing the button again will set the sunroof to open automatically by about 80%. Touching the button once more will open the sunroof completely. For the sunroof to stop, press button ① or ② midway.



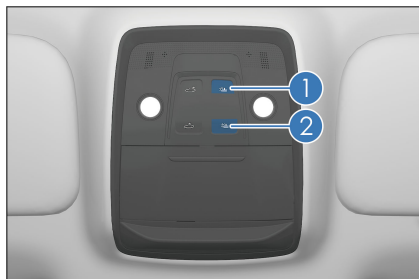
Closing the sunroof

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunroof. The sunroof will stop if the button is released.
- If the sunroof has been initialized, releasing the sunroof close button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunroof automatically. For the sunroof to stop at its current position, press the ① or ② button midway.

Opening/Closing Sunshade

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, press button ① or ② midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the sunshade close button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or button ② midway.



CAUTION

When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain to prevent damage.

Sunroof Anti-pinch

If the sunroof or sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing, or severe injury may occur.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

CAUTION

- Trying to open the sunroof in outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

Initialization

With the ignition on, the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:

- Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for five seconds to initialize the sunroof/sunshade.
- If the sunroof/sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunroof/sunshade close button, and release it when the sunroof/sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least five seconds, and release it until the sunroof/sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.
- The sunroof and sunshade are initialized separately.

Interior Light Switch

Front Interior Lights

Left interior light button

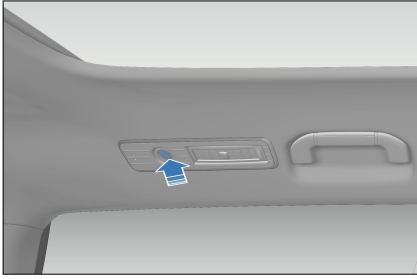
Right interior light button



- With the ignition on, if DOOR option is selected and any door is open, interior lighting switches between high and low brightness with touches on the light switch.
- With the ignition off and DOOR option selected, interior lights will go off after the door have remained open for a period of time. If there are other operations during this period, the timer will be restarted.
- To turn on or off the "DOOR" gear, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut page.

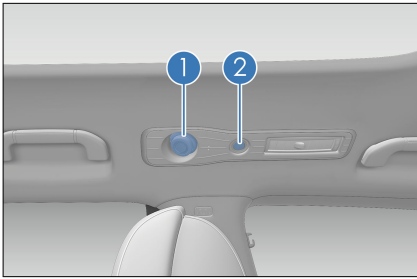
Second-row interior lights

The operation of the second-row interior light switch is the same as that of the front interior light switch.



Rear-row interior lights

- The operation of the rear-row interior light switches ① and ② is the same as that of the front interior light switch.
- The lighting angle of rear-row interior lights can be adjusted by rotating the switch ① manually.



Ambient Lights*

To control the brightness, color and area of the ambient light, go to  infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Ambient Light**.

04

USING AND DRIVING

Charging Instructions.....	96
Battery.....	111
Usage Precautions.....	114
Starting and Driving.....	123
Driver Assistance.....	133

Charging Instructions

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Since charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death, if you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), before charging, confirm with the device manufacturer whether charging affects the normal operation of the device.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
 - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling if there is a fault.
- Ensure the quality of charging equipment.

- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment when the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
 - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the ground cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
 - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

Warnings before charging

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, and no damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of the situations above, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
 - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

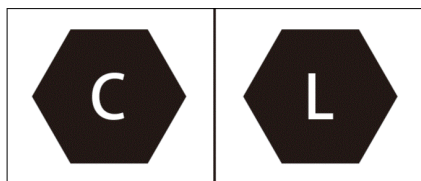
- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- Close the AC charge port cap before DC charging* and the DC charge port* cap before AC charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Warnings after charging

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, components of the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets) and on the charging cable.



Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging* can be carried out in any power mode, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging to ensure safety. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-

start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.

- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to set early stop for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, pay attention to the followings:
 - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. This will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
 - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
 - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
 - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
 - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
 - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobilizer system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.

- The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
- Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
- Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector. If an additional adapter is required, choose a suitable cable diameter ($\geq 1.5 \text{ mm}^2$) and the adapter/connector specifications must meet requirements.
- It is normal that when the battery is heating up and working, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the battery thermal management can improve the low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. These are normal phenomena.

Precautions before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- With the charge port unlocked, open the port, hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
- In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster, and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

Precautions during charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area. Make sure that the air intake grille is not blocked.

After charging:

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Pull out the charging connector.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked,

otherwise the charge port may be damaged.

- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery will be reduced.

- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, for better charging performance.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
Charging stops midway.	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
	The charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that whether the charging connection cable is loosely connected.
	Power outage	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	In this case, charging stops automatically. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.
	The vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check Before Charging:
 - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
 - When the metal terminals of the charging connector, charge port, power plug, or power socket are loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
 - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

Before mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read **P96** in "Charging Instructions".

- To prevent damage to charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read precautions on **P97**.

Equipment

- This Mode 2 charging cable* includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. Connect the plug to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.



REMINDER

- It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.

! REMINDER

- When using mode 2 charging cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:

- With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:

- Open protective cap of the charging connector and vehicle socket. Make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:

- Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket. The power indicator of the cable becomes solid red.

4. Connect to the vehicle port:

- Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
- After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator  lights up on the instrument cluster. The charging indicator of the Mode 2 charging cable flashes green.

! REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See **P105** for details.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:

- The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
- To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.

2. Unplug the charging connector:

- If the immobilizer of the electrical lock is deactivated, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
- If the immobilizer is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.

! REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the

! REMINDER

microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).

- When the immobilizer system is active, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see **P107** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see **P108** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly with the charge port's immobilizer system deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



! REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read **P96** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read precautions on **P97**.

Equipment

- AC charging box*
 - Consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
 - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.
- Single-phase AC charging pile
 - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:

- See **P100** to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the AC charge port cap.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
 - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
 - Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
 3. Connect to the vehicle port:
 - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
 4. Charging settings:
 - Skip this step if a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
 - For public single-phase AC charging pile with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile details.
 5. The charging connection indicator  lights up on the instrument cluster.



REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See **P105** for the configuration process.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
 - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:

- Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
 - If Mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
 - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
 4. Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
 5. Store the equipment properly.
 - Place the charging connector in its designated location in the charging pile.

Using DC Charging Piles*

Before using DC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read **P96** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read precautions on **P97**.

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charging piles.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
 - Unlock the vehicle and switch the ignition off before charging.

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and the DC charge port cap.



2. Connect to the vehicle port:
 - Plug the charging connector into the port and lock it.
3. Start charging:
 - Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.
4. The charging connection indicator  lights up on the instrument cluster.



REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
 - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.

2. Unplug the charging connector:
 - Pull the charging connector after the vehicle is unlocked or pull out it directly as needed.
3. Reinsert the DC charge port cap and close the port door.
4. After DC charging with a charging pile, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in the designated position properly.



CAUTION

- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact customer service of the charging pile in a timely manner.

Vehicle AC Charge/Discharge Indicator*

- The charging/discharging indicator is located in the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle body, and it indicates the charging state in green, yellow, red, blue, and white respectively.
- If the charging/discharging connector is not connected, the indicator remains solid white for a period of time. If the vehicle is locked during use, the indicator is on for a period of time and then turn off. When the vehicle is unlocked, the indicator lights up again.

Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Lighting	Charge port opened (no connector connected)	Solid white	
Charging	Charge/discharge initialization process	Flashing yellow	

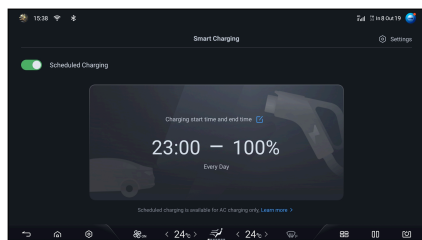
Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Charging	Charging being scheduled/ charging paused	Solid yellow	
	Charging in progress	Flashing green	
	Charging complete	Solid green	
Discharging	Discharging in progress	Flashing blue	
Fault	Charge/Discharge fault	Solid red	

Scheduled Charging

- The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access the setting:
 - Go to infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy**. The reservation charging screen is displayed.
- To exit the Scheduled Charging page, tap  or .

Reservation charging settings

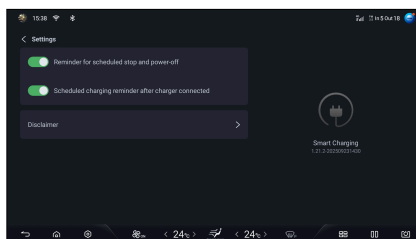
- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the reservation charging ON, set the charging start time and repeat cycle, and save the settings.



- After the reservation is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle during the charge

waiting period, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that reservation charging has been set. Switch to instant charging if needed.

- You can tap the reservation charging setting icon to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert in the Reservation Charging Alert.



CAUTION

- The reservation charging function is developed for DENZA's slow AC charging equipment only. Please disable this function when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by DENZA. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The "charge now" option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding screen.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed at the lower part of the instrument cluster.

Discharging Instructions*

- This vehicle is equipped with vehicle-to-load (V2L) feature.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions **P96** for charging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.

WARNING

- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never use the charging equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For discharge connection device precautions, see Charging Precautions in **P97**.
- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.
- Before VTOL discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

V2L External Discharging

Check before discharging:

- Discharging safety warnings are given in **P96**. Carefully read and observe these warnings to prevent serious personal injury.
- Discharging precautions are given in **P97**. Carefully read and observe these precautions to prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle.
- Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
- Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
- Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
 - Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
 - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.

Starting discharging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
 - Before discharging, unlock the vehicle (disarm the anti-theft alarm system).
 - See Unlocking the charge port door **P100** to open the port door and cap.
2. Connect the discharge connection device:

- Connect the V2L discharging connector to the charge port and firmly connect it.

3. Start discharging:

- After the switch button on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator becomes solid red, indicating that the socket can be used.
- After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

1. End the charging:

- Press the switch on the discharging socket.
- In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (not recommended).

2. Disconnect the discharge connection device:

- With doors unlocked, press the mechanical button on the discharging connector and remove the connector from the charge port.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see **P100**).

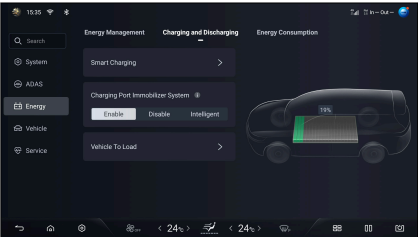
3. Organize the equipment:

- Store the discharge equipment in the luggage storage box after discharging is complete.

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. This function is disabled by default. Go to the central infotainment touchscreen  → **Energy** → **Charging**

and Discharging to enable the charging port immobilizer system.



- When the immobilizer is enabled, unlock the vehicle and unplug the

charging connector during charging in the following ways:

- With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
- Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
- Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.

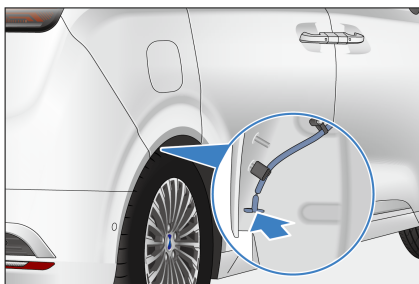
No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	/	No
2	Enabled	Start	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locked	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Start	/	Yes

! REMINDER

- The connector needs to be pulled out within 30 seconds after it is unlocked. Otherwise, the electric lock will lock again.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When this system is enabled, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer, unlock the charge port manually.
1. The mudguard below the charging port incorporates an emergency pull release mechanism for the charging gun.
 2. Open the cable latch and pull the emergency cable to unlock the charging connector.
 3. Reset the emergency cable latch after unlocking.



⚠ CAUTION

- The emergency unlocking function is usable for AC charging connectors only.

Driving Range Display

- The range display mode can be set to improve driving experience. The default setting is standard mode.
- The corresponding settings can be made on the ⓘ infotainment touchscreen → **Energy** → **Energy** → **Range Display Mode**.
 - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
 - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
 - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

! REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:

! REMINDER

- The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
- The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set SOC balance value.

! REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC Setting

- Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, slide down the shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or go to the infotainment touchscreen  → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → SOC Settings.
- The SOC balance point is the target remaining battery.
 - When the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, to make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce the fuel consumption, a lower target SOC is recommended.
 - When the destination is not convenient for vehicle charging, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
 - For a better driving and riding experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the target SOC according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- AUTO/SAVE mode is related to the vehicle energy management priority:
 - AUTO: Prefer fuel economy, but also take battery power keeping into consideration.
 - SAVE: Prefer keeping vehicle battery power, and try to get close to the target SOC.

Regenerative Braking Settings

- There are two modes of energy feedback intensity: standard and larger. Users can select the corresponding energy regeneration mode according to driving habits by going to the infotainment touchscreen  → **Energy** → Energy Manager.

- The factory default target value is always maintained if not set by the user.
- It has the memory function, and the setting value will be defaulted every time after power-on.

In-Situ Electricity Generation

- During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine will drive the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed is higher than the normal idle speed, which is normal. The in-situ electricity generation exits when the SOC is higher than a certain value.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous driving mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Electricity Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity.



REMINDER

- When generating electricity in situ, the generated output is displayed low on the instrument cluster due to electrical appliance power consumption.

Battery

Power Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.



CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.



REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new cars with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles



REMINDER

that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure electric mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is going to be idle for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If the vehicle is going to be idle for over three months, charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- When the outside temperature is low, the high-voltage battery heating system will be activated and heat up the battery to improve the low-temperature charging speed and ensure the vehicle power and driving range.



WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Any organization or individual who

WARNING

illegally disassemble or dismantle the battery shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents so caused.

CAUTION

- When the high-voltage battery fails, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery works normally at temperatures between -35°C and 60°C.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, and the after-sales service provider will help the recycling organization assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Then take it to a recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste power batteries to the recycling service

WARNING

outlet. Those who hand over waste power batteries to other organizations or individuals for dismantling or disassembly without authorization, thus causing environmental pollution or accidents, shall bear the corresponding responsibilities.

Low Voltage Battery

- The vehicle's battery is BYD's self-developed lithium iron phosphate battery, referred to as low-voltage battery. The low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the low-voltage battery is low, it may be charged by the high-voltage battery or the engine automatically to increase its battery life.

REMINDER

- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition off produces a sound which is heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

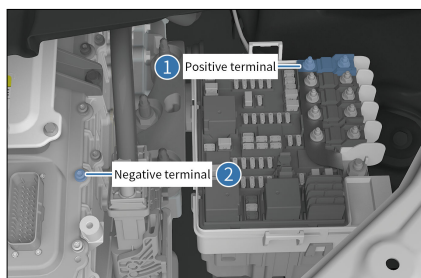
- **Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch**
 - The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key. At this time, press the microswitch on

the driver's door handle (See **P58**) to activate the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

- Wake-up by jump starting
 - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low. The instrument cluster may display "The low-voltage battery SOC is low, and the vehicle is going to be powered off", and the vehicle will become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.
 - The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals for the jump start in the under-hood PDB are shown in the figure.

① Positive terminal for the jump starting of the under-hood low voltage distribution box

② Negative terminal for jump starting



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above steps, it is recommended to contact a DENZA

authorized dealer or service provider in time.

WARNING

- Do not connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start before it is powered on. Otherwise, the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- If the low-voltage battery SOC is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Please carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that the jump start be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-hood PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

Intelligent Charging

When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated to prolong the use of low-voltage battery. When the power battery is low, the vehicle may start the engine

to generate electricity to meet the needs of intelligent charging function. This model is provided with the intelligent charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

CAUTION

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After locking the vehicle, when the power battery is too enough to trigger the engine to generate electricity, a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of emission gas will be exhausted.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. It is recommended that this be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-ECO mode by smooth driving, instead of high-speed driving. The following practices can effectively prolong vehicle service life:

- Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid speeding.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- During the break-in period, the proportion of HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) must not be less than 50% of the driving mileage.

Trailer Towing

- This vehicle is designed to carry passengers. Do not overload it or use it to tow other vehicles.
- Before towing a trailer, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to confirm whether the vehicle has sufficient capacity for towing the trailer.
- Driving safety and comfort totally depend on equipment usage and good driving habits.
- BYD does not provide free warranty for the damage or faults resulted from the trailer towing.

WARNING

- Do not tow a trailer whose weight exceeds the tow eye capacity. Otherwise, it may cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.
- Be sure to increase the distance between the vehicle and another ahead of it when towing a trailer as the braking distance may be

! WARNING

increased in towing. When driving at 10 km/h, keep this distance at least equal to the sum of the length of the vehicle and the trailer. Avoid emergency braking to prevent vehicle folding and out of control due to slippage.

- Maintain the trailer's tire pressure at the value specified by the trailer manufacturer based on the gross weight of the trailer.
- If the vehicle is used to tow a trailer, improve the maintenance frequency due to vehicle load increase.

! CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

Suggestions for Vehicle Use

Suggestions for prolonging the battery usage:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% - 60% which is not too high or too low, and close the doors and windows.
- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every three months, and then charge it to 40% - 60% for storage.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a

temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.

- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid driving the vehicle continuously for a long time; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- Contact a DENZA authorized service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the fault prompt.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

WARNING

- Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

CAUTION

- If the battery meter drops to 0, the vehicle must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such

CAUTION

damage is not covered by DENZA warranty terms.

- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.

Turn the vehicle off.

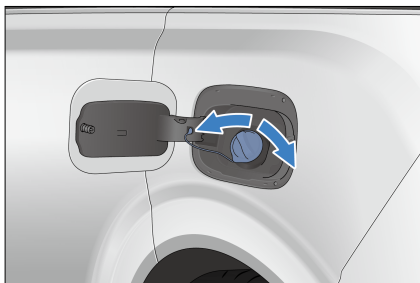
1. Open the fuel door.

- Press the fuel door on the left side of the vehicle to open it.



2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- Wait for 5-10 seconds and rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it. During this period, the fuel tank cap idling is normal. You may hear a "hiss" sound due to the air supply to the vacuum in the fuel tank.



- If the fuel tank cap is idling and cannot be opened, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Emergency opening of fuel filler cap: Lever the blanking cap off, which is in the center of the fuel tank cap handle. Insert a slender guide rod (such as a gel pen refill) into the small hole till the end and keep, and rotate the handle counterclockwise to take the fuel tank cap off.

3. When the fuel filling is completed, close the fuel filler cap.

- After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.



CAUTION

- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule, such as burning fuel.



REMINDER

Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:

- It is recommended to add fuel outdoors. Please turn off the engine before filling.
- Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
- Do not remove the fuel tank cap immediately when opening it. In hot weather, if the fuel tank cap is suddenly removed, fuel under pressure may spray out of the port, causing injury.

REMINDER

- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel door is closed after refueling.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
 - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
 - The vehicle has been in an accident that may damage the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must

WARNING

be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:

- Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
- Select the "face/foot level" mode.
- The fan speed is set at "high RPM".

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
 - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
 - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
 - Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
 - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C to reduce fuel consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
 - Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
 - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight

brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.

- Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEVSPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
- When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
- Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
- Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal when driving the vehicle, this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed to save fuel.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.



REMINDER

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal

operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.

- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the trunk for large and heavy objects.
- Long items can be loaded by folding the rear seat backrests. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's operating functions.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windshield. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that objects placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under

the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.

- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.



REMINDER

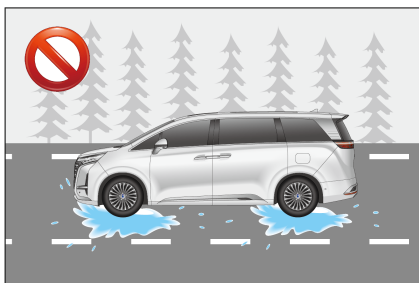
- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Trunk

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- For trunk strapping or fastening supplies, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Wading into Water

- Check water depth - it must not exceed the vehicle's lower edge - before driving into flooded areas.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner, slow down, and press the accelerator pedal gently. Keep your foot on the pedal until you cross over, or the exhaust back pressure will suck water into the engine, causing serious damage.



- Never stop and reverse the vehicle, or turn off the engine in flooded areas.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- No water ingress into the engine is allowed. If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the engine, otherwise the engine will be damaged seriously. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.
- After the vehicle is driven through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system, may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.

WARNING

- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- Water in high-voltage components reduces ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance, posing a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
 - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
 - Smoking is not only harmful to your health, but can also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
 - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
 - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
 - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
 - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
 - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the three-way catalytic converter rises after a long-term drive.
 - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
 - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
 - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.
 - Call a fire emergency number. Then contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and your insurance provider.

- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed controls the fire so that the fire can be put out more easily.) Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.



REMINDER

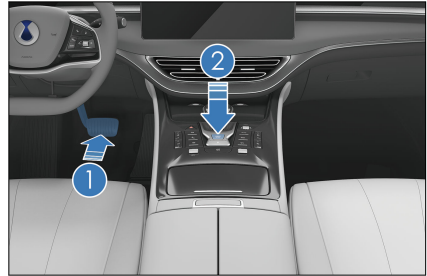
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to "D" or "R" position, and then the electrical parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving until you hear a motor release sound from the electrical parking brake system.



The vehicle cannot power on when

- The vehicle cannot power on when:
 - After you press the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
 - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, trunk, or storage compartment.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- The gearshift lever is on "P".
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

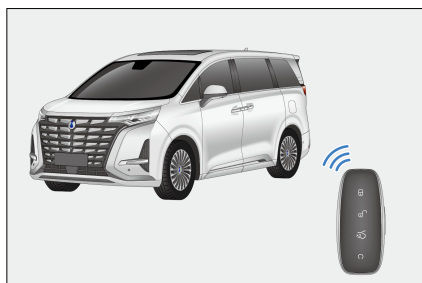


CAUTION

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

Remote Start

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut,

damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.

- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: After the vehicle has been stationary for some time, check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat Belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

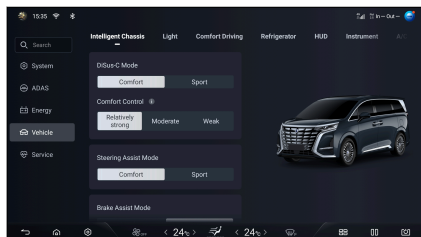
Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

DiSus-C*

- The DiSus-C system is an electronically controlled shock absorber suspension system, which adjusts the driving comfort and stability by controlling the damping force of the electronically controlled shock absorber. Go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis** → Disus-C Mode to select Comfort or Sport.



Comfort control

- Comfort control: During acceleration and deceleration, the vehicle experiences pitch motion caused by

load transfer. The function suppresses the vehicle pitch by coordinating the suspension damping and the brake end pressure, which improves the driving comfort.

- Go to the  infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis** to enable or disable comfort control and choose Weak/Moderate/Strong.



CAUTION

- In case of emergency braking, its effect may be reduced.

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Adopt eco-driving practices and perform regular maintenance help enhance driving range, reduce fuel consumption, and contribute to environmental protection.

- Maintain economic mode driving where possible.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
 - Perform regular maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economy for the vehicle.
 - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
 - Maintaining the economic speed can effectively improve driving range and

reduce fuel consumption. Excessively high or low speeds are not beneficial for fuel efficiency. Under safe conditions, try to keep your vehicle at the economic speed.

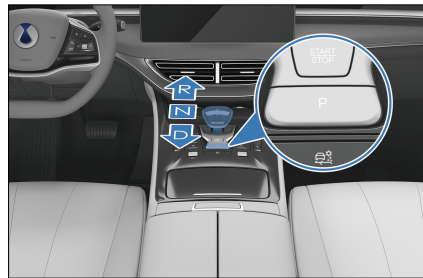
- Predictive driving
 - Ensure driving safety;
 - Avoid unnecessary sudden acceleration and braking;
 - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead;
 - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
 - Keep a steady speed.
- Use the energy recovery system properly
 - Under safe driving conditions, select an appropriate braking intensity based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, please apply gentle braking to decelerate and avoid abrupt stops.
- Reduce unnecessary in-vehicle items:
 - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
 - The heating and cooling processes are highly energy-intensive, significantly reducing driving range and increasing fuel consumption. Reasonable use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce both electricity and fuel consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary features:
 - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

! REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear actuator is marked on the gearshift lever.
- After starting the vehicle, depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button and toggle the gear shift controller forward or backward to shift gears.



- Parking Gear (P Gear)
 - Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and press the button of P to shift into P gear.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
 - When the vehicle is in P, depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button and move backward the gear shift controller two positions to shift to D.
- Reverse (R Gear)
 - When the vehicle is in P, depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button and move forward the gear

shift controller two positions to shift to R.

- Neutral (N gear)
 - When the vehicle is in P, depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button and move forward or backward the gear shift controller one position, and then keep temporarily to shift to N.
 - When the vehicle is in D and the speed is lower than 10km/h, move forward the gear shift controller one position and keep temporarily to shift to N.
 - When the vehicle is in R and the speed is lower than 10km/h, move backward the gear shift controller one position and keep temporarily to shift to N.

WARNING

- It is prohibited to drive downhill in N gear, as this may damage and the transmission and compromise the driving safety.
- If you want to shift a gear, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents. When depressing the accelerator pedal, the gear can not be shifted into D or R.
- Never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

- After gear shifting, the current gear status should be checked on the instrument cluster, and if the gear displayed on it is not align with the gear that should have been shifted into, reshift it.

CAUTION

- When reversing, please be cautious about the surroundings so as to avoid the accidents.
- When parking, please ensure that the vehicle is in P gear before leaving the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Release the controller after toggling, the lever returns to its middle position automatically.
- If under the current driving speed, the gear shifting is not allowed, or the gear shift controller is toggled without the brake pedal being depressed, the prompt will be displayed on the instrument cluster and the current gear will be kept.
- Only when the OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, could the gear be shifted into D or R.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

Set EPB on the "EPB" option on infotainment touchscreen, when you press the brake pedal and EPB is released, EPB applies an appropriate parking force, the indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When  flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until  is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and  lights up on the instrument cluster.

Engaging EPB automatically when shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until  on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB activated" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator  on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Do not over rely on the function that opening the door will shift the gear to P and engage the EPB, because the EPB may not be engaged or the EPB will not apply enough braking force which may lead the vehicle roll away. Thus,

WARNING

for safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into "P" or the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gears:

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

**CAUTION**

- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test (POST). In this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal:

- When the vehicle has been started and in Drive or Reverse and the Electronic Parking Brake function is enabled on the infotainment system, press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and (P) turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the "P" button for over two seconds for emergency braking.

**WARNING**

- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.
- For safety considerations, refrain from using the EPB for braking

**WARNING**

in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) comes on the instrument cluster and then turns off in a few seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (P) turns on and then turns off in about three seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**WARNING**

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the gearshift is not to be used to replace EPB when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in "P" gear.

WARNING

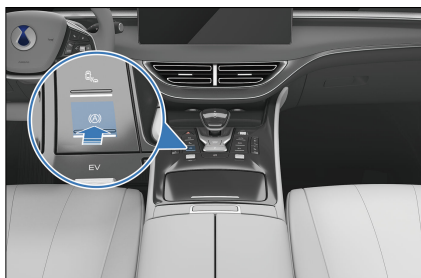
- The EPB switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Automatic vehicle hold (AVH): The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable AVH.  is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator  is solid on, press and hold the brake

pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with  displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
 - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
 - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator  is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator  lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
- Shift into "D", drive the vehicle normally, then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH.

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
 - Open the driver's door.

- Unlock the driver's seat belt.
- If the vehicle is in Drive when it stops, activate EPB.
- Press the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- When you shift into Reverse, AVH goes into slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. To keep brakes dry, drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently.
- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

WARNING

- The high-voltage battery is located in the vehicle's chassis. Make sure to avoid bumping when driving.
- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle with ignition on.
- Remember to carry the smart key when leaving the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
 - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
 - Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
 - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
 - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
 - These can be found in DENZA authorized dealers or service providers and the auto parts stores.
 - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.



CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.
- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
 - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.

- It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.
- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, suspensions, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 10 mm in thickness or diameter, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.



CAUTION

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve.



CAUTION

to avoid accidents due to loss of control.

- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them immediately after driving on snowy or muddy roads.
- If an abnormal sound is heard from the snow chain, please stop the vehicle immediately to check whether the vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines are normal, and ensure that there is no contact between them and the snow chains.
- Please turn off the engine, apply parking brake and then install the snow chain. Do not install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient

compliance with local traffic laws at all times.

- The functions are divided into two categories: driving assist and safety assist.
- Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
- Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.



WARNING

- Before using the driving assistance system, the driver is required to carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and technical documents. Learn and master the essential knowledge of using the system, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations and functions' descriptions, scope of application, methods of use and precautions. During system use, strict compliance with the operating instructions is required to ensure safe and effective operation. DENZA assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.
- The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. When using the system, the driver must comply with local

Driver Assistance

About Driver Assistance system

Driver Assist System Introduction

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver is solely responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure

WARNING

traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are designed to clearly and concisely communicate key points during system usage to drivers. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle. It is required to continuously monitor the vehicle, system status, and external environment and respond as necessary. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents, even property damage and personal injury.
- Drivers shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driving assistance system, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. DENZA shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. DENZA reserves the right to temporarily disable system

WARNING

functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, DENZA reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorized agencies with legal procedures.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windshield may affect the system working.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. If necessary, please contact with the Denza official customer service.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
 - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
 - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other

contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.

- If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensing faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.
- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
 - When the windshield fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windshield defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windshield.
 - Using a neutral cleaning agent (e.g., soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
 - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
 - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may

cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.

- Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
- Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
- Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
- Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
- The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, keep the bumpers clean in order to avoid influencing radar performance. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplating operating) decorative parts on the bumper without permission.

Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
 - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
 - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
 - Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect

vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.

- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Read the following information carefully **P136**.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a DENZA authorized dealer if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by DENZA or make modifications not approved by DENZA.
- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a DENZA authorized dealer to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and have it properly inspected and addressed.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.

WARNING

- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

device issues (including operator-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
 - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
 - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
 - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels

(for example, fenders and tailgate), frame, or other components.

- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, and car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
 - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
 - Improper tire inflation or excessive tire wear.
 - Unqualified tires installed.
 - Snow chains installed.
 - Use of a small spare tire or emergency tire repair kit.
 - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.

- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example) or too curvy roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The vehicle is driven in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, and nighttime).

- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is in extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children)
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles

with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo

- Irregularly shaped strange obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, water barriers, and traffic cones, which are difficult for the system to identify
- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colors
- Complex traffics, including vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, as well as settings such as on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations.



WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact an authorized after-sales service center for inspection and servicing.
- For safety considerations, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety considerations, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, by waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the

WARNING

accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.

- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Because the system cannot accurately detect and react to emergency in the surroundings, you must be always ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (by deceleration, braking, steering or so) whenever necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected

ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the button on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct traveling direction of the vehicle.

Function Status

- When ACC is activation-ready, If the conditions for ACC activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: it allows the vehicle to cruise at the target speed or automatically adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: a function unavailable prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster in response to ACC activation attempts.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC On Status		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current power cycle.

ACC On Status		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current ignition cycle. The cruise speed before last ACC deactivation is displayed in the indicator icon.
Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC failure		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it is faulty.

Function Definition

Activation Conditions

- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The rear-end door, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed), stepping on the brake pedal or engaging EPB activates ACC.
- If the vehicle is traveling (speed greater than 0), ACC can be activated when the brake pedal is not stepped on.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.



CAUTION

- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather

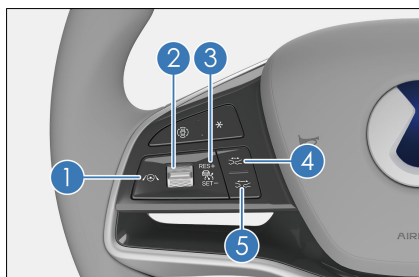


CAUTION

than complex urban or mountain roads.

Activation Methods

- In the power-on cycle of this vehicle, when the function is used for the first time, it can only be activated by the button ① and ③. Otherwise, push button ② up to activate ACC.



- When activating the function via button ① or ③, the system sets the current speed as the target cruise speed (minimum 30 km/h). When activating via rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last set speed before exiting ACC.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. To ensure safe driving, the driver must set and adjust the target speed according to local regulations and road conditions.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 30-150 km/h by moving ② up or down. Briefly pushing the button up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.

WARNING

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Do not over-rely on ACC to reduce the speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Buttons ④ and ⑤ increases and decreases the time-based following distance. At each setting level, the faster the speed, the longer the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, The default level is 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a vehicle ahead is detected, ACC helps the driver maintain a safe following distance and follow the vehicle by accelerating, decelerating, stopping, and starting as needed.
- During following cruise, the vehicle ahead being followed is highlighted in blue on the instrument cluster. The following distance varies with the vehicle speed and the following distance level, and is not a fixed value. See "Setting following distance".
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop
- ACC automatically accelerates your vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
- If your vehicle has stopped for a longer period of time, resume motion by pressing the accelerator pedal or pushing up the ② ACC cruise button as prompted.
- ACC will be canceled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

ACC Accelerates the Vehicle

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
- In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.
- In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
- In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.
- ACC may not identify very close vehicles or pedestrian.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in

WARNING

an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active*

- Enable or disable the manual acceleration function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → Adjust cruise speed by accelerator pedal. The function is disabled by default.
- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal; the driver assistance system does not brake during this process.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal to increase current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal to raise the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
 - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
 - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
 - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80 km/h, the real-time speed is set as the cruise speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

- If the accelerator pedal is depressed and lever ② is pushed downward at the same time, the current speed will be set as the new target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate ACC by pressing button ① or depressing the brake pedal. When the vehicle is stationary, the system can only be deactivated by pressing button ①.

Deceleration on curves (also applicable for ICC)

- Speed adjustment on curve can be activated only when the ACC function is activated.
- You can enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disabled by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
 - The front mmWave radars and cameras are installed at the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their detection area can compromise system performance. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and notify the driver via the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target

(a bicycle, three-wheelers, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.

- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, causing it malfunction.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- If performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras is affected by vibration or collision, perform the repair immediately.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.



WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware

 WARNING

of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

 WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, for which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see the chapter "Safety Assist").
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.

 WARNING

- The vehicle may not be capable of detouring around forward targets that pose a collision risk, particularly when the target is stationary or the vehicle speed is excessive.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.
- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain.
- Situations where ACC and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
 - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
 - Vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
 - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
 - Tire pressure is abnormal.
 - Airbags are abnormal.
 - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
 - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system

- malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
- Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions)
 - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare.
 - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
 - Mountain roads and rural roads
 - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections
 - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
 - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
 - Curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
 - Congested intersections
 - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
 - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, or animals from blind spots.
 - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead.
 - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane.
 - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way.
 - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
 - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off.
- Other issues
 - Other issues include but are not limited to: other situations listed under general system limitations.

**WARNING**

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- As a driver, it is your responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that

 WARNING

stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.

- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed. That is, the system may not give timely warnings in every case, which necessitates your prompt responses.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function does not cover all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- ACC may brake the vehicle if it is too close to the adjacent lane or if the adjacent vehicle is too close to your lane.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- In rare cases, while the vehicle stops as does the vehicle ahead, the system may fail to recognize the rear of the vehicle ahead, such as the rear axle of a truck with a higher chassis or vehicle bumper. This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you

 WARNING

must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.

- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer for professional calibration and checkup of the front-facing camera including but not limited to the following situations:
 - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
 - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
 - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
 - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted a system error.

 CAUTION

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always pay attention to the surrounding situation and take full responsibility for driving safety.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel while the function is active and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC

functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ACC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC fault, unavailable

Function Definition

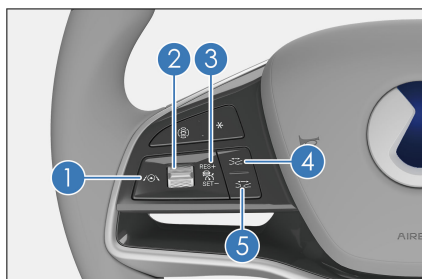
Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when  displays on the instrument.

How to use

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  →**ADAS**→**Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- In this vehicle's power-on cycle, the ICC or ACC functions have not been

activated, press button ❶ to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane lines), ACC will be activated first. Once the activation conditions are met, ICC will be automatically activated. If ICC or ACC has been activated in a current power cycle, pushing up button ❷ can also activate ICC.



- When ICC is successfully activated, the ICC icon . The target speed will be shown in .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruising and following-distance control and all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the

WARNING

vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.

- To ensure safe driving, always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Driver disengagement alert

- During ICC activation, the driver's continuous hands off the steering wheel will trigger the driver's motion off reminder.

Exiting ICC

- When ICC is active and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ① or depressing the brake pedal. When the vehicle is stationary, the system can only be deactivated by pressing button ①.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately when ICC is just activated. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance

! WARNING

degrades significantly in backlight, at sunset, on snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings, and under other similar situations.

- Do not use the ICC on winding roads with sharp turns (curves with large curvature), icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of the front camera.

! CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned and centered in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

- When TSR system detects that the speed limit value is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.
- The system's operating speed range is 30–150 km/h.

Function settings

- ISLC could be set by going to the infotainment touchscreen → 

→ADAS→Safety Assist→Traffic Sign Recognition→Intelligent Speed Limit Control.

- ISLC is disabled by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
- With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

! CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the function precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed.

Front Safety Assist**Front Collision Warning (FCW)**

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

FCW includes three functions:

- Safe distance warning:
 - When the vehicle runs at 65-150 km/h, the system continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. If following the vehicle ahead closely in a long-time is detected, the system issues a safe distance warning to prompt the driver that the following distance is too close.
- The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a textual prompt is displayed to alert the driver.

- Pre-warning:
 - When the vehicle runs at 15-150 km/h, the system will give a pre-alarm when it detects a collision risk between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
 - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a textual prompt is displayed, and the buzzer alarms.
- Emergency warning:
 - If the vehicle runs at a speed between 15 km/h and 150 km/h and the driver does not respond to the pre-warning, the system will issue an emergency warning through auditory, visual, and tactile alerts. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
 - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a textual prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. FCW can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
 - OFF: FCW is disabled.
 - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
 - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
 - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.



REMINDER

- The factory default setting is moderate, and the settings will be saved after each power cycle.

System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
 - Animals.
 - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
 - Poor weather such as rain, snow, or fog;
 - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.

- Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
- The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
- The driver presses the brake pedal.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
- Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
 - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
 - Pedestrians obscured by other objects.
 - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
 - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
 - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
 - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
 - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
 - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
 - Forward collision warning may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
 - If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.



WARNING

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgment and operation.

WARNING

- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not

WARNING

- work properly and thus result in accidents.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer for professional calibration of mmWave radars in any of the following situations:
 - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
 - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
 - The vehicle experienced a collision.
 - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
 - Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is covered with dirt or foreign objects, a corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, remove the obstructions as instructed as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- When the vehicle runs at 4 km/h-150 km/h, AEB continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. When detecting a risk of collision with vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists ahead, the system automatically applies braking pressure to decelerate the vehicle.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator, a prompt message with animation and text is shown, and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable AEB in the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- It is strongly recommended that not to disable the AEB function. and if it is disabled, the vehicle will be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- The AEB function is enabled by default and will be saved after each power cycle.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
 - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
 - Animals.
 - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
 - Poor weather such as rain, snow, or fog;

- Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
- Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
- Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
- The front hood or tailgate is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
- Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
 - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
 - Pedestrians obscured by other objects.
 - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
 - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
 - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
 - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
 - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
 - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:
 - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
 - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
 - Improper tire inflation or excessive tire wear.
 - Unqualified tires installed.
 - Snow chains installed.
 - Use of a small spare tire or emergency tire repair kit.
 - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
 - The vehicle is in break-in period.

- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
- AEB cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.

WARNING

- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer for professional calibration of mmWave radars in any of the following situations:
 - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
 - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
 - The vehicle experienced a collision.
 - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning but turns the steering wheel, accelerates or brakes.

REMINDER

- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is covered with dirt or foreign objects, a corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, remove the obstructions as instructed as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

Traffic sign recognition (TSR)

- Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) identifies speed limit signs on the road through the multi-purpose camera or maps. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.
- TSR contains two sub-functions: Speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
- SLIF: detects speed limit information by using cameras or maps and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.
- ISA: When the instrument cluster shows the speed is above the identified speed limit, the speed limit icon will provide a visual or audible alert to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

Function settings

- Switch TSR and sub-features on or off in the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Speed limit change tone*: mutes or unmutes the tone indicating speed limit sign change.
- ISA: enable/disable the visual alert when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.

REMINDER

- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involve in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. Perform the repair immediately if it fails to restore.
- If TSR malfunctions and is unavailable, and perform the repair immediately.

System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:

- Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.
- Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered speed limit signs
- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations
- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

**WARNING**

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
 - Unclear speed limit signs
 - Incomplete speed limit signs.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front

**CAUTION**

camera or lane function activation include but are not limited to:

- Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
 - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 60–150 km/h.
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system

issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.

- Lane Departure Prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- Setting on: on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assist**.
- LDA is disabled as delivered from the factory and every time when the vehicle is started.
- The LDA alert mode is set as steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to Sound alert, Vibration alert or Sound + Vibration alert.
- Lane departure sensitivity: set as "Moderate" by default. When situations such as driver fatigue are detected, the system automatically adjusts to "High" sensitivity. Power cycling the vehicle will restore the sensitivity to "Moderate".
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Warning: only LDW enabled, no steering intervention.
- Correction: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.



REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. Perform the repair immediately if it fails to restore.
- While the function is activated, the driver's hands must not be off the steering wheel, otherwise the system will give a visual prompt or vibration to alert the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails,  is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message, and at this time, it does not work. and perform the repair immediately.

System Limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of lane markings is easily interfered by the environment.

Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:

- Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.
- Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
- Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
- Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
- Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
- Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
- Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
 - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.

- Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
- Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. The LDP function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane due to lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:



CAUTION

- Driving in a sporty style.
- Severe weather conditions;
- On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
 - Unclear lane lines.
 - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
 - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
 - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
 - Partially or completely blocked camera lens;
 - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
 - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
 - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
 - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*
Emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with corner mmWave radars. If the system determines that the driver unintentionally departs from the road or is at risk of doing so, and there is a collision risk with a detected target vehicle, it assists in steering correction to help the vehicle stay in its current lane. This helps prevent unintentional road departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

Setting on: Enable or disable ELKA in the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Emergency Lane Keeping Assist**.

- ELKA is disabled by default as delivered from the factory. The setting remain enabled after each restart.
- OFF: ELKA will not operate.
- On: ELKA is active.



REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.

! REMINDER

- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. Perform the repair immediately if it fails to restore.
- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator  will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. and perform the repair immediately.

System Limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
 - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.
 - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
 - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
 - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
 - Unidentifiable road edge with grass, soil, or curb.
- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
- Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
- Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
- Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
- Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as the type, position, timing, or occlusion of obstacles, resulting in delayed or failed intervention. Scenarios include:
 - Large vehicles ahead block the detection area of the radar or camera.
 - Obstacles move quickly or are at close range into the front or side of the vehicle.
 - Fences, water barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles in the vehicle's front lateral or rear lateral areas that the system may fail to detect.
 - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.

- Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
- Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
 - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
 - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
 - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in

WARNING

the center of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.

- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
 - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
 - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
 - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
 - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
 - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:



CAUTION

- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
- The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes* such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
 - The vehicle is at an intersection.
 - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The Blind Spot Detection (BSD) function uses sensors such as radars and cameras to detect targets (vehicles or riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 15 km/h-150 km/h, the indicator on the side mirror flashes when BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turning signal lever at this

time, the side mirror indicator at the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash to remind the driver of the danger of collision.



REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions, they need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In that case, it is recommended to have it repaired in time.

Function settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic,

weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- Situations where BSD and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
 - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
 - Driving on sharp curves.
 - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
 - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever

WARNING

necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety.
- Door Open Warning (DOW) detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on or drives slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such

! REMINDER

as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.

- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In that case, it is recommended to have it repaired in time.

Function settings

- Enable or disable DOW on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where DOW and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
 - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
 - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
 - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
 - There are small targets or slow moving targets.

- The target speed is too high or there is turning behavior, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning,

WARNING

but cannot avoid the collision accident.

- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward.
- When the vehicle runs at a speed below 150 km/h, the Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when it identifies that the rear vehicle may rear-end the vehicle.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In that case, it is recommended to have it repaired in time.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS → Safety Assist.**
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned off by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
 - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
 - Any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
 - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
 - The driver brakes hard.
 - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
 - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
 - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, timing, or other factors, which may result in no warning or delayed warning.
 - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
 - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
 - There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
- The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.
- The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.



WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to

WARNING

prevent the vehicle from further danger.

- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the Rear Collision Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-15 km/h.
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the

WARNING

obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
 - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
 - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, or heavy fog
 - The function is disabled.
 - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
 - System initialization has not been complete yet.

- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
 - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
 - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
 - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
 - The target is obscured.
 - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; the vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
 - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
 - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.

- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.



WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear

lateral impact braking system is 0-10 km/h.

- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned off by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings of the last power-on cycle.

System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
 - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
 - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, or heavy fog
 - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
 - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
 - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
 - System initialization has not been complete yet.
 - The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
 - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
 - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
 - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
 - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
 - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
 - The target is obscured.

- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; tThe vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are

WARNING

- more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Light System

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

How to Use

- Enable or disable AFL in Vehicle Settings  → **Light** → **Exterior Light**. The system defaults to settings just before the last power-off when the vehicle starts.
- AFL indicator:



On/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
 - The light switch is in AUTO position.
 - The vehicle speed is 35 km/h $\leq$ 140km/h.
 - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
 - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
 - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
 - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

- Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the AFL may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
 - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
 - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such

WARNING

- as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- The AFL system is an auxiliary light control function, but the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgment. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to contact a qualified after-sales maintenance personnel for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

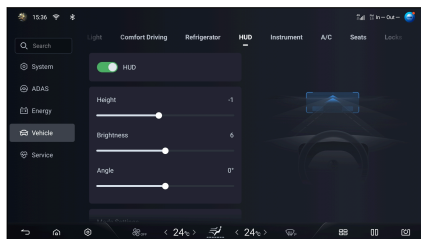
- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the AFL function.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress AFL function.

Head-up Display (HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information, including vehicle speed, navigation, speed limit, ACC, lane departure, and BSD into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of their eyes.

How to Use

- To enable or disable HUD, go to infotainment touchscreen  → **Vehicle**.
- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.



- Height adjusting:** adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
- Brightness Adjusting:** adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 1 and 11. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 6.
- Whirling adjusting:** adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.

- Mode setting:** select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Settings optional for display:** safe driving assistance or navigation. They are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.



CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the  button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the  and  buttons, and then select the tire pressure display screen using the scroll button.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 75% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended

to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.

- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. You are then recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "Abnormal signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires

WARNING

and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.

CAUTION

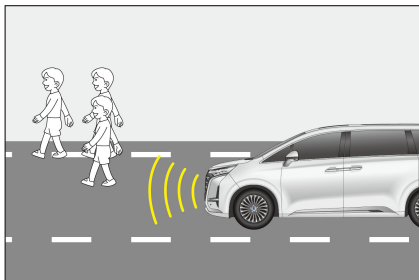
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-DENZA approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Please go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)

System Function

The Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
 - The broadcast volume increases with increment of vehicle velocity that is at $0 \text{ km/h} < V \leq 20 \text{ km/h}$.
 - The broadcast volume decreases with increment of vehicle velocity that is at $20 \text{ km/h} < V \leq 30 \text{ km/h}$.
 - The broadcast sound stops automatically when vehicle velocity is greater than 30 km/h .



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced sound when reversing.

Disabling/Enabling the System

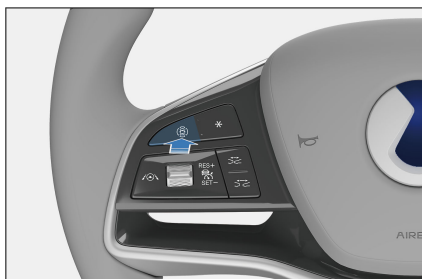
To turn on or off AVAS, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut page (some countries and regions forcibly require the AVAS to be turned on, there is no option to turn it off.).

WARNING

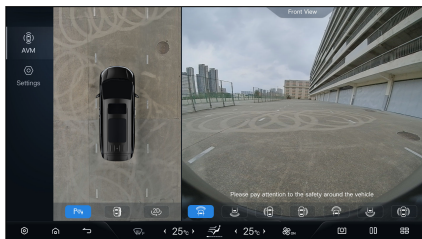
- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in D gear and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Panoramic View System*

To enable the panoramic view, tap **Vehicle View** on the infotainment system homepage, press the button on the steering wheel or shift into Reverse.

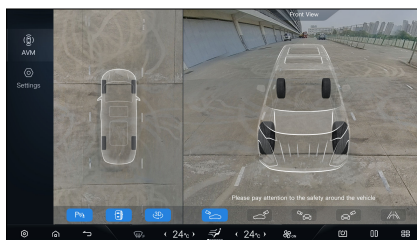


- On the bottom of the infotainment touchscreen, tap the icon for front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.



- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a full screen.
- Tap the radar icon  in the panoramic view to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Slowly tap the vehicle image on the left to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.
- After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete

when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.



WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the car should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts

WARNING

of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.

- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Parking Assist System

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen* and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.

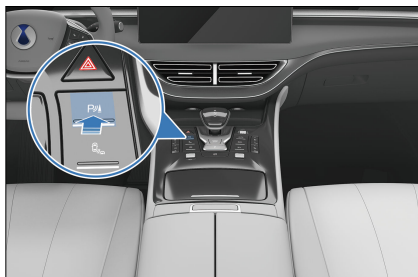
- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Parking Radar Switch

- Turn the parking radar system* on or off with the parking radar switch or on infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS → Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is on and EPB is released, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.



- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found

surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

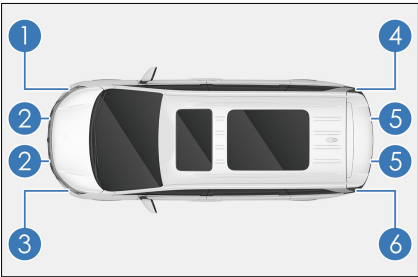
- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

① ③ Front outside sensors

② Front middle sensors

④ ⑥ Rear outside sensors

⑤ Rear middle sensors



Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

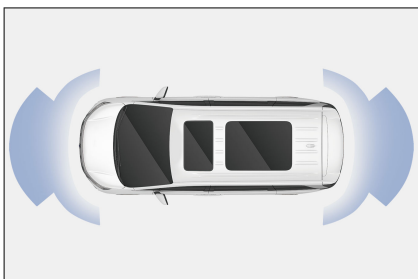
Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 300 to 700		Fast
About 0 to 300		Continuous

Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



! REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
 - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
 - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
 - The sensor is masked in any way.
 - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
 - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.

- The sensor has been repainted.
- The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
- There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
- The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
- The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
- The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
- The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
 - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
 - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
 - Any object with sharp edges and corners
 - Low obstacles
 - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
 - Any object under the bumper
 - Any object close to the vehicle
 - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a

beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for a service.

 CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), ESC and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB), comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such

information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System(TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

 WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
- On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
- Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control(HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

When "P" button or EPB switch* is pressed and held, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant

deceleration until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases "P" button or EPB switch*, CDP stops functioning.

Hill Descent Control(HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. You can enable or disable HDC on the infotainment touchscreen  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The main function of HDC is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
 - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
 - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivating HDC:
 - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator turns off.
 - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
 - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be

temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.

- A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed on the instrument cluster for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
 - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
- You can select Comfort/Sport brake assist mode on the infotainment touchscreen  → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis**.
- Brake disc wiping
 - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
 - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
 - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is

spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.

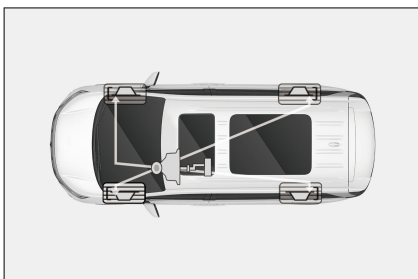
- Disabling ESC
 - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
 - To turn off ESC, press and release the ESC OFF button. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
 - Some functions of the ESC system may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
 - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch* is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC system
 - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC system start and speed linkage
 - If the ESC system is turned off, when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and

exceeds the threshold (80 km/h), the ESC system starts on its own.

- With ESC system activated
 - If the ESC fault indicator  flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
 - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing Tires
 - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
 - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
 - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
 - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator  will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
 - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
 - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
 - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
 - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
 - Bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, slow down and keep a long distance from other vehicles.

05

IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

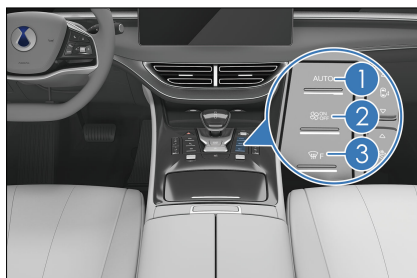
A/C System.....	186
Storage.....	192
Other Devices.....	195
Infotainment System.....	201
Refrigerator.....	210
BYD App.....	211

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C buttons:

- ① AUTO
- ② A/C ON/OFF
- ③ Front windshield defroster



A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface



- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1 Climate controls | 10 Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors |
| 2 Ventilation/Heating* | 11 Circulation mode |
| 3 Air purification button* | 12 Ventilator |
| 4 A/C setting | 13 Front passenger A/C temperature adjustment |
| 5 A/C ON/OFF | 14 Air distribution |
| 6 Auto mode | 15 Negative ion key |
| 7 Cooling | 16 Driver's temperature control |
| 8 Max cooling | |

Function Definition

Auto mode

- After tapping this button, the compressor status, fan speed and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Cooling

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button and then  is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time.  is displayed, and the air inlet mode is fresh air mode.

REMINDER

- When the "automatic recirculation when parking" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched into internal recirculation mode.

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- A/C temperature regulation
 - Slide downward to increase the temperature. Slide upward to decrease the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear windshield & side mirrors*

- Tap this button, and the heating panel of side mirrors will quickly clear the mirrors. The function is automatically

deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.

- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Fan speed control

- Fan speed control
 - Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.
 - Tap  in the left to turn down fan volume by 1 level, and tap  in the right to turn up it by 1 level.

Air distribution

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.
 - Blowing face ➡ : Air flows to the face level.

- Blowing legs ↓ : Air flows to the foot level.
- Defrost  : Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open. to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, leaves or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the cooling button to reduce airflow moisture and the button lights up (the compressor is on).
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from

outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

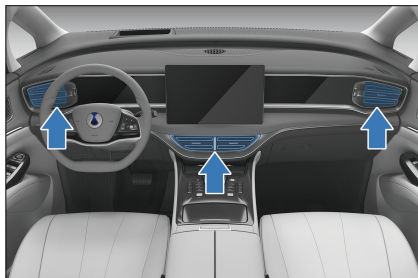
! REMINDER

- A/C odor:
 - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce unpleasant odors by long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent A/C odors:
 - Inspect, clean, or replace the A/C filter regularly.
 - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the A/C odor prevention methods are useless, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

Vents

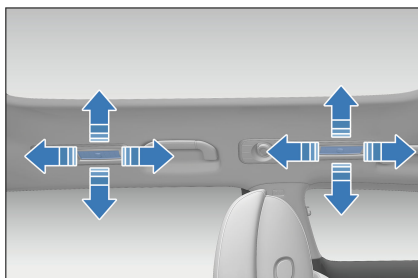
Front Vents

- Toggle the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle or air flow. Toggle left/right to their limits to close the air outlet.



Roof Vents*

- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle or close the vent.



A/C Settings

A/C settings interface

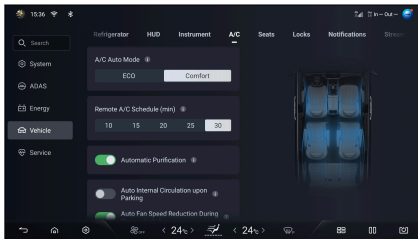
- Press this button to display A/C Settings screen.

Auto A/C mode

- Two options are available: Economical and Comfort.

Remotely controlled air conditioner running time

- Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.

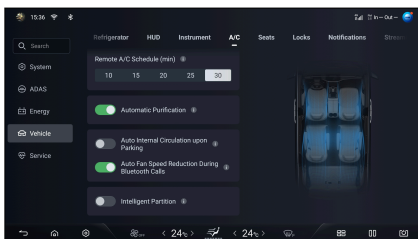


Automatic purification

- Tap this button to enable auto purification function.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Auto air recirculation

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.



Auto air recirculation in tunnels

- Auto air recirculation on/off setting in tunnels.

Fan speed reduction during calls

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Intelligent Partition Setting

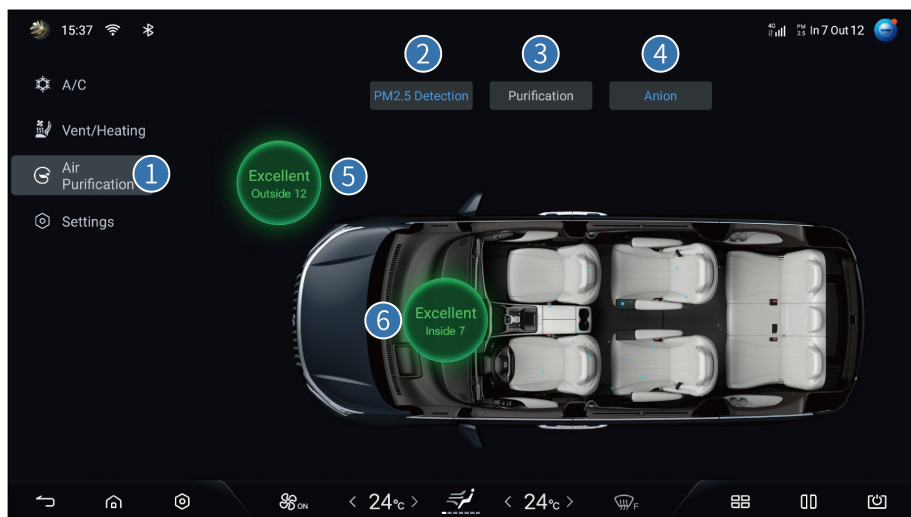
- Intelligent partition on/off setting.

Air Purification System

The air purification system purifies airborne PM2.5 particles. When A/C is turned on, the system thoroughly removes PM2.5 particles from the air blown into the cabin.

Air Purification Operation Interface

Tap Air purification on the infotainment touchscreen, the air purification interface is displayed.



- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Air purification button | 4 | ION |
| 2 | PM2.5 detection | 5 | Exterior purification |
| 3 | Quick purification | 6 | Interior purification |

PM2.5 detection

- Tap on the "PM2.5 detection" button to activate and detect PM2.5 concentration inside/outside in realtime, which will be displayed in real time on the infotainment touchscreen.
- PM2.5 detection will stop if the button is tapped on again.

Quick Purification Button

- This function can quickly reduce the concentration of PM2.5 particles in the air inside the compartment in a short time.

- Tap on this button to activate and enable the function; and tap on the button again to exit.

Inside PM2.5 value and level

- Displays the PM2.5 value and level outside/inside the vehicle.
- The PM2.5 value detected by the on-board Particulate Matter 2.5 (PM2.5) detector is the PM2.5 value in the air near the vehicle carrying the device in a short time, which should be different from the daily or real-time PM2.5 value declared by national and relevant government authorities.

Here is a reference of air quality grade:

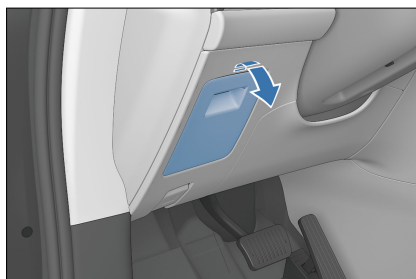
Range of PM2.5 Values	Air Quality Grade
0-35	Good

Range of PM2.5 Values	Air Quality Grade
36-75	Moderate
76-115	Detrimental to sensitive groups
116-150	Unhealthy
151-250	Very unhealthy
251-999	Hazardous

REMINDER

- The frequency of PM2.5 detection should be reduced in the following environments:
 - Sandstorms and other such extremely harsh environments.
 - Cold regions (with ambient temperature below -20°C).
 - High humidity environments (relative humidity >90%).
 - Environments with a change in temperature (prone to condensation), such as driving in from a cold environment to a high-temperature indoor environment or parking lot.
- Running maximum air flow speed in internal circulation mode can quickly reduce the concentration of fine particles in the air inside the vehicle.

- Keep the bill box closed while the vehicle is in motion.



Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



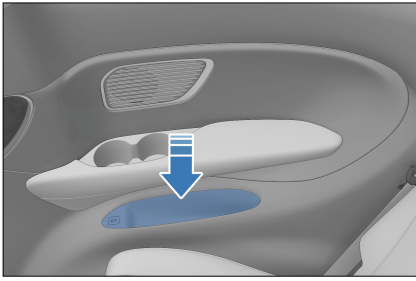
Storage

Bill Box

- Lift the bill box handle upward and outward to reach the bill box.
- Do not put large or heavy objects in the bill box to avoid closing failure.

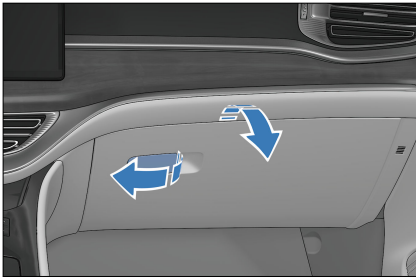
Rear Phone Holder*

- The side door of third-row seats is equipped with a phone holder for phones or other small items.



Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.

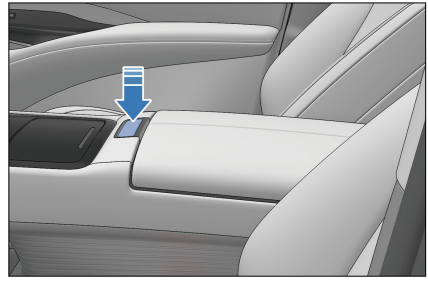


! REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Center Console Cubby

- The center console cubby opens to the left and right. To open it, press the button on the front of the cubby to automatically turn covers.
- Press down on the cover of center console cubby to close it.



! REMINDER

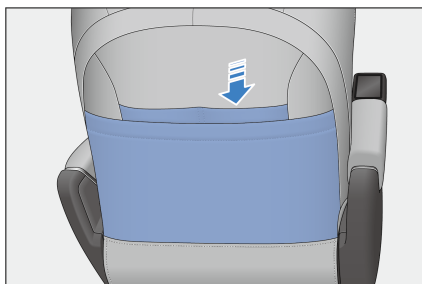
- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



- There are seatback pockets at the back of the second-row seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



Glasses Case

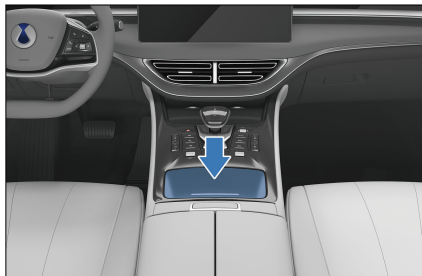
- Press the lid of the case to open it.



Cup Holder

Front Cup Holder

- The front cup holder is located inside the auxiliary dashboard. Tap the cup holder cover to let it open automatically.

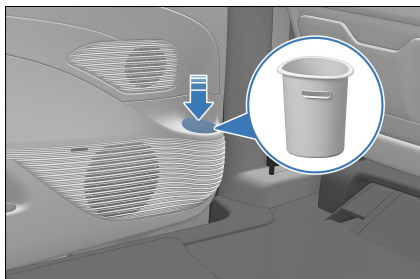


CAUTION

- Some cups or bottles may not fit in the holder due to their size or shape.
- Before driving, remove any cups or items from the holder that may obstruct the driver's view.

Door Side Cup Holders

- Door side cup holders are located on both sides of the power sliding door.
- The silicone pad inside the cup holder can be removed for cleaning.
- When installing the cup holder, the buckles (as shown in the illustration) should be positioned outward.



CAUTION

- Before operating the sliding doors, ensure that no objects in the cup holders obstruct the door's movement or causing damage.

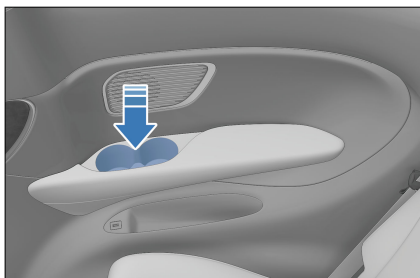
Second-Row Seat Cup Holder

- The middle-row seat cup holder is located behind the auxiliary dashboard.



Rear Cup Holder

- The rear cup holder is located on both sides of the rear seat.



! CAUTION

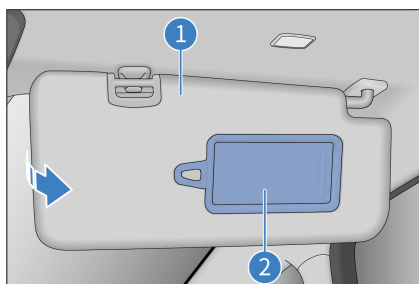
- Be cautious with hot drinks to avoid burns. Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent spills.
- Do not place an open cup or loosely capped bottle in the holder, as liquid may spill while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- Do not place glass, ceramic cups, or other hard items in the holder, which may cause injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- For safety driving, the driver should not place or remove cups from the holder while driving.

Other Devices

Sun visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

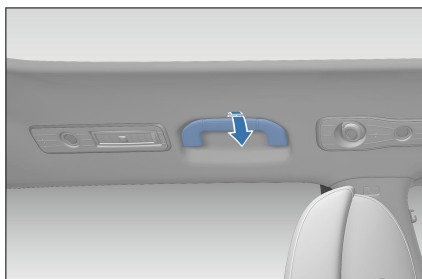
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

! REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.

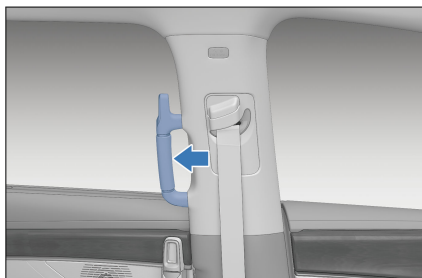


⚠ CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

Auxiliary Handles

- Auxiliary handles on the pillars can help passengers get on or off the vehicle, or hang light items temporarily.



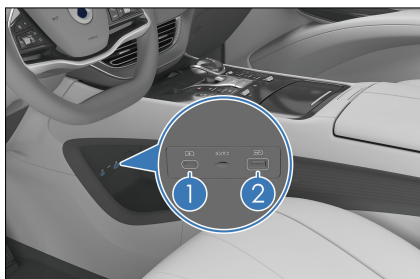
USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

There are two ports installed in the lower layer of the auxiliary console.

- ① Type-C port, which can be used only for charging.
- ② Type-A port for data transfer.

The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

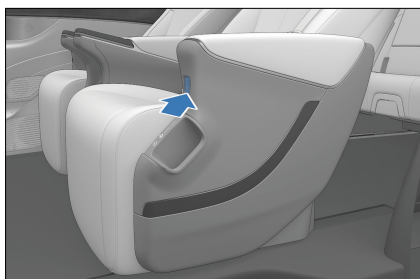


⚠ CAUTION

- It is recommended to use USB storage devices of 8-128 G with FAT32, ExFAT or NTFS format.
- Do not use special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

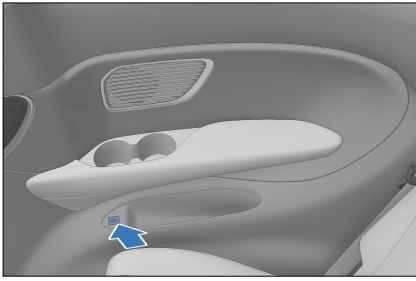
Second-Row USB Ports

The second-row USB port is located on the left seat armrest.



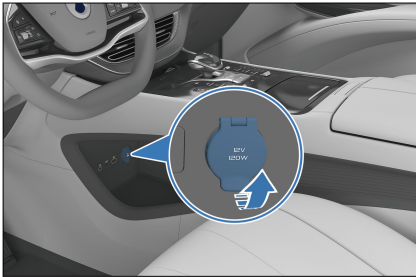
Rear-Row USB Ports

- These ports are for charging only and cannot be used for access to the infotainment system.
- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.



12V Auxiliary Power

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.



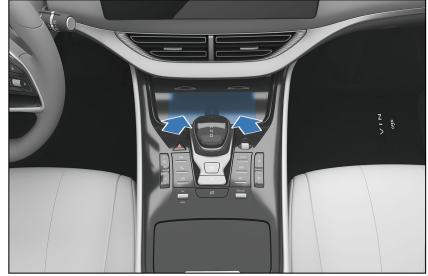
Wireless Phone Charging Location

The charger charges phones without a cable connection through electromagnetic wave induction.

Front-row wireless charger

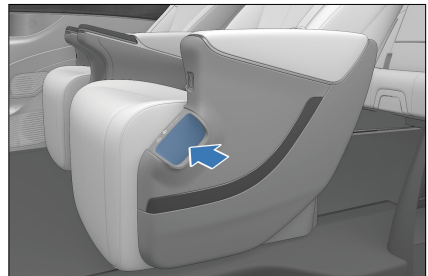
- After starting the vehicle, place a smartphone screen-up in the wireless charging area to activate the wireless charger. At this time, the wireless charging icon in the upper right corner of the infotainment touchscreen is on, indicating that the phone is being charged.

- To disable the wireless charger: On the infotainment touchscreen, slide down shortcut menu and tap the wireless charging icon. The indicator turns off and the wireless charging function is disabled.



Second-row wireless charger

- After starting the vehicle, place a smartphone in the wireless charging area with its screen facing out and the camera facing up to activate the wireless charger. At this time, the wireless charging icons in the upper right corner of the corresponding seat armrest screen and rear head support screen* are on, indicating that the phone is being charged.
- To disable the wireless charger: On the seat armrest screen or the rear head support screen*, slide down shortcut menu and tap the wireless charging icon. The icon goes out and the wireless charging function is disabled.



CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it. If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, remove the phone immediately, and do not remove the metal item until it has cooled to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charger area), or charging may fail.

CAUTION

- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- The wireless phone charging system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as NFC cards and bank cards, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless

! REMINDER

charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

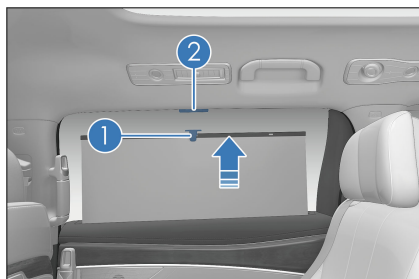
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.
- When the sliding doors on both sides are closed and the mobile phone is charging wirelessly in the second row, if the passenger opens the sliding door and leaves the seat, there will be a voice announcement "the mobile phone is still charging, please do not leave it behind", the head support screen displays the forgotten icon of the mobile phone.
- Phones must always be positioned horizontally in the charging area, whether for charging or not, otherwise gear shifting may be affected.
- When the phone is placed in the second-row wireless charging holder, make sure that the screen is facing outward and the camera is facing upward to ensure the stability and continuity of wireless charging.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.

! REMINDER

- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

Window Sunshade*

- The window sunshade is used for privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Hold the handle ① to pull up the sunshade vertically, and clip both bulging sides into the grooved hanging pedestal ② above.
- Do the reverse to pull down the sunshade vertically, and the handle can be stowed in the groove on the cover plate.



! WARNING

- Do not operate the sunshade while the sliding door is moving.

! CAUTION

- Do not pull on both ends of the sunshade when using it.

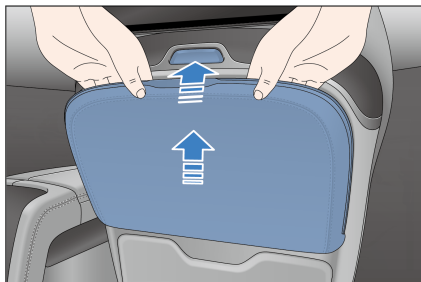
Tray Table

Tray Table*

The tray table is folded at the back of the front seats.

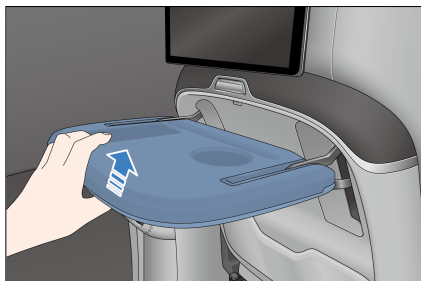
Unfold the tray table:

1. Press the unlock button.
2. Hold the edge of the tray table, lift it up to the limit position, and unfold it.



Fold the tray table:

1. Hold the edge of the tray table, lift it up slightly to the limit position.
2. Push it forward to the locking position.



WARNING

When using the table, make sure to observe the following precautions to prevent injury or even death in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

WARNING

- During operation, put your hands away from the folding area and the rotating mechanism to prevent pinching.
- Do not use the tray table when the vehicle is running.
- Do not lean or place items over 10 kg on the tray table.
- Fold the table when it is not in use.

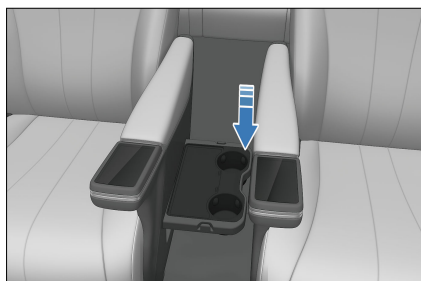
CAUTION

- Do not press the table to prevent damage.

Seat Side Table

There is a removable panel in the second-row rear right seat side which functions as a cup holder and temporary table.

- Pull up the handle to unfold the table.
- Press the handle to fold the table.



CAUTION

When using the table, make sure to observe the following precautions to prevent injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

**CAUTION**

- Do not place heavy objects on or lean on the table.
- The maximum weight the table can carry is 15kg.
- Fold the table when it is not in use.

**REMINDER**

Do not press the table to prevent damage.

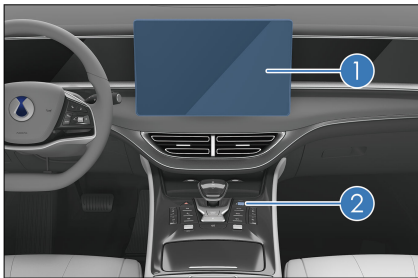
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- When the infotainment system is already started, press the button (less than three seconds), and the system

goes into standby mode. Press and hold the button for three seconds, and the system is restarted.

- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down. Volume ranges from 0 to 39. A mute icon is displayed when volume is 0.

**WARNING**

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
 - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove finger from the screen, then touch it again.
 - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
 - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
 - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
 - The touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.

CAUTION

- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Infotainment System

- A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap Agree to enter the system.
- When the infotainment system is started, the screen is automatically displayed, containing status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.

- The top status bar displays the function status icons.

Icons in the status bar include two types: operable* and display only.

- Shortcut menu

Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen opens the shortcut menu.

- Navigation Bar

-  : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.

-  : returns to the homepage.

Touch and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops base on preferences.

-  : goes to vehicle setting screen.

-  : goes to the app list screen.

-  : splits screen if applications support.

-  : enables screen saver.

- Task management center

Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.

- Desktop widget: The components on the desktop are customized by factory default, and users can add, delete or change the location of widgets according to their preferences.

REMINDER

- The shortcut menu on your actual vehicle may differ.

Nap Mode*

- Mode activated: When you needs a short rest, activate the nap mode and set the duration from the drop-down menu on the infotainment touchscreen. Tap "OK" to activate the mode, and tap "End Now" to exit the mode.
- Alarm settings: There will be an alarm at the end of the nap time. Tap "Cancel" to end it. If no operation is issued from the users, the nap mode will be set to be prolonged in the alarm clock by default, and it will sound again after the time is over.
- Mode: In the nap mode, the driver's seat is automatically lowered to the default position, the A/C is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and systems such as the windows and the sunroof are automatically closed. The infotainment touchscreen displays the nap mode interface, with the front passenger screen* and the instrument cluster screen off.

CAUTION

- Before activating the nap mode, make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park.
- Before entering the nap mode, close all doors and the trunk to ensure safety;

CAUTION

- Before entering the nap mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- Do not turn on nap mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not take a nap in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- To prevent rear passengers from being pinched or items from being damaged, ensure that no passengers and items are on the rear seats before you take a nap.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the nap mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park or is powered off, which is normal.

Vehicle Setting of the Infotainment System

Vehicle setting of the infotainment system mainly includes: Search, Denza Link, Denza Pilot, Energy, Vehicle, Service and other functional modules.

Reset to factory settings

- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
- During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
- The process takes two to five minutes.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in or out an image and double tap to get back.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.

OTA Updates

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping  → **System → Version → Version update → Update.**
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately, schedule an update or use mobile phone update according to your use of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.

CAUTION

- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is in Park, at a safe place with a stable network connection.
- Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before the upgrade.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the smart key/microswitch unlocking/locking, interior light switch, hazard warning light, and window switches.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it also fails, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap
Please connect Bluetooth to establish connection.
2. Tap Scan for device to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the pairing code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth Call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap Contacts, Call log, and Missed calls, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

BYD Assistant

Voice Assistant supports your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/jokes/radio station, turning on the A/C, and making a phone call.

To wake up Voice Assistant, press the  button on the steering wheel, tap the voice icon  on the infotainment system, or saying the wake-up word. Say the wake-up word: "Hi, DENZA." Say "Hi, DENZA" to wake up the Voice Assistant and begin the voice recognition.

Your speech instruction can be recognized after the wake-up. Then, you can give the instruction.

Other Applications

Customization app—map

- Customized map: supports location, search, route planning, navigation, and other functions.
- Most interactive controls are on the left side of the map to adapt to real driving.

External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system that supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing external apps:

1. Download the intended app.
2. Tap the app file, select Allow App installation to install it.
3. The installed app is in the app list. Tap to use it.

**CAUTION**

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.
 - Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Use it with caution.
- Uninstalling external apps:
 1. Select the app to uninstall in System → Apps → Apps.
 2. Tap Uninstall and confirm.

**CAUTION**

- The default apps included with this infotainment system cannot be uninstalled.

My Car

My Car consists of vehicle control, driving behavior and vehicle health.

- Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control*.

- 1 Music
- 2 Seats
- 3 A/C System
- 4 Lighting
- 5 Refrigerator
- 6 Sunroof

- Shortcut control: Shortcut control can be achieved by the left shortcut bar and the shortcut function of the card entrance at the bottom.
- 3D vehicle model control: 3D vehicle dimension users can click the hotspot area to operate the vehicle control. It includes sunroof, sunshade, windows, tailgate and the side sliding door. The specific vehicle control function is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.
- Body color change: You can switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
- Vehicle control customization: Press More to view all shortcut functions, and press and hold the function icon to adjust its position in accordance with using frequency. The vehicle control function is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Armrest Screen*

Armrest Screen Instructions

- 7 Settings
- 8 Screen lock
- 9 Shortcut button of doors and windows
- 10 A/C temperature
- 11 Seats interface
- 12 Status bar



Music

Tap the music application on the armrest screen to enter the music operation interface: The music functions of the infotainment touchscreen (without head support screen) can be adjusted, such as the switching of the sound source or music.

Seats

Tap the seat application on the armrest screen to enter the seat operation interface: Users can not only adjust seat, massage*, and vent/heat in the operation interface, but also adjust seat position or seatback angle with the mechanical button on the side of the armrest screen.

Users can click the "boss key" to enter the corresponding interface and adjust the passenger seat position or the backrest posture.

Press "Position 1" / "Position 2" for a long time to save the current seat position and posture, and the corresponding text prompt will be displayed on the armrest screen; click "Position 1/Position 2" to restore the saved seat position and posture.

Tap the "Zero Gravity" button for the seat to return to the zero gravity position. Tap the "Reset" button for the seat to return to its initial position.



REMINDER

- The seat can be interrupted by other operations (such as manually adjusting the seat position) in the process of position recovery. The text prompt of "Recovery interruption" would be displayed on the armrest screen.
- During the vehicle startup and in a ignition cycle, when the sliding door is opened for the first time and the second-row seat is seated, the system directly displays the seat adjustment interface for your quicker adjustment of seat position.
- During the process of returning to the zero gravity position or the initial position, the seatback is put down or straightened. Pay attention to the safety when using the seat.

Refrigerator

Users can control the extension/retraction of the refrigerator, turn on/off the sterilization and power off memory function, select its powering off/refrigeration/heating/fresh-

keeping operation, and set the delayed power-off time in the refrigerator operation interface.

Sunroof

To adjust the relevant functions of the sunroof, sunroof sunshade and canopy sunshade, go to the sunroof operation interface.

Settings

To set the armrest screen lock time and read the system version information, go to the setting interface.

Shortcut button of doors and windows

- When the screen is not locked, slide the screen to open/close the sliding doors after tapping the button for a long time.
- When the screen is not locked, tap the button to enter the control interface for the opening/closing of the sliding doors and windows.



REMINDER

- The function is disabled with the mechanical child protection lock activated, and there is a corresponding prompt message.

A/C

When the screen is not locked, tap A/C and slide the screen to adjust the temperature.

Seats interface

When the screen is not locked, tap the seat interface entrance for the quick access to the interface before the last exit.

Drop-down menu

Users can access the shortcut interface through the drop-down menu to set related functions, such as screen brightness, vehicle volume, activation/

deactivation of the Do Not Disturb Mode, second-row wireless charger, and screen quick lock.

Shortcut

- When the screen is not locked, swipe upwards and downwards with two fingers to quickly adjust the temperature.
- When the screen is not locked, swipe horizontally with two fingers to quickly adjust the fan speed.
- Swipe a finger from the edge of the screen to the inside (left to right/right to left) to quickly exit the current screen.

Status bar

Through the status bar, users can know the current working status of functions like seat massage, wireless charger, and refrigerator heating/refrigeration.

Mode

- Do Not Disturb* In this mode, the headrest-mounted infotainment touchscreen will ban parts of the interlink features such as interlink Karaoke, rear-row control and rear-row view.
- When the central infotainment touchscreen is turned on, the corresponding armrest-mounted infotainment touchscreens will display the baby mode interface. In the baby mode, you can tap the icon of the seat at the bottom-right corner of the display to adjust the position and the angle of it.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.
- Network interference may result in unstable wireless connections.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection**
 1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
 2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- **To deactivate the connection:** choose any of the following ways:
 - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
 - Delete or disconnect the projected device from the vehicle's connected device list.
 - Delete the projected device from the vehicle Bluetooth list.
 - Connect the Bluetooth of the projected device.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Tap Apple CarPlay app to reactivate it wirelessly.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the DENZA icon  on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon  on the infotainment system's application screen.

Switching between devices

- On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, tap the connected device icon on the shortcut menu to access the connected device list.

- The device list allows switching among wireless devices that have been connected before. Connecting a new device triggers a switch prompt.

Possible issues

• Checking your phone

- Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
- A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.

• Checking connections with the vehicle

- For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
 - Both Bluetooth and Wi-Fi have been turned on.
 - Make sure that the Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to Settings → General → Carplay, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap Forget This Car. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
- The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
- Make sure Siri is on.
- Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to Settings → Screen Time → Content & Privacy Restrictions. If Content & Privacy Restrictions is on, tap Allowed Apps & Features to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.

- Visit Apple website for a list of countries or regions in which Apple CarPlay is available.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection:** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer port with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection:** unplug the USB cable to stop Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- Follow the steps to set up a **wireless connection:**
 1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
 2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- **To deactivate the connection:** choose any of the following ways:
 - Turn off the vehicle hotspot.
 - Delete or disconnect the projected device from the vehicle's connected device list.
 - Delete the projected device from the vehicle Bluetooth list.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Unplug and replug the USB cable to reconnect in a wired manner.
- Re-pair Bluetooth or tap the Android Auto app to reactivate it wirelessly.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit from Android Auto, tap  on Android Auto interface.
- To go back to Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon  on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.

Switching between devices

- By using the list, you can only switch to a wireless device. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- While a phone is already being projected, plugging in another phone also triggers the switching prompt.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
 - Make sure your phone supports Google service.
 - Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
 - To use Android Auto on the vehicle's infotainment system, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones and countries or regions supported at Google website.
- How can I check the connection between my phone and the vehicle
 - For wired connections, use a qualified USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port on the vehicle.
 - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are turned on on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.
- **Unable to reconnect Android Auto**

Try the following steps:

- If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
- For wireless Android Auto, before re-repairing, delete the phone from the vehicle's device list and forget previously connected devices on the phone: On your Android phone, navigate to or search for Android Auto in Settings. Tap Previously connected cars, then the three-dot menu button, and select Forget all cars.

Trademark statement

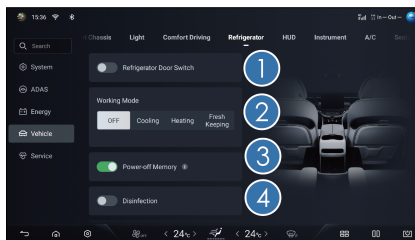
- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Refrigerator

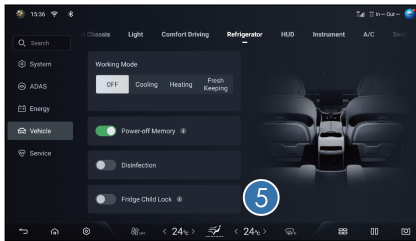
Refrigerator Operation Interface

Refrigerator Operation Interface (PAD)

- ① Refrigerator Door Switch Button
- ② Refrigerator working mode
- ③ Power off memory button
- ④ Disinfection button

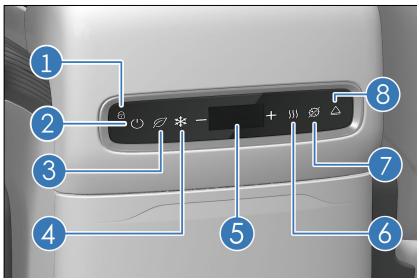


⑤ Fridge Child Lock



Refrigerator control buttons

- ① Refrigerator screen child protection lock
- ② Refrigerator Power Switch
- ③ Fresh-keeping
- ④ Refrigeration
- ⑤ Temperature regulation
- ⑥ Heat
- ⑦ Sterilization
- ⑧ Refrigerator door switch



Refrigerator Instructions

BYD App

BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently

developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.

- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap Sign up to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap Send email to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.



CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the DENZA authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
 2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
 3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
 4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
 5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.



CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.

06

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information.....	214
Regular Maintenance.....	219
Self-Maintenance.....	225

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- The items listed are important and need to be performed according to the specified time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Plan Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance items need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
 - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads
 - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
 - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
 - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven or the outside temperature is below freezing.
 - Long idling or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car or taxis, or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

First maintenance:

The vehicle must be maintained at 6 months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage) for the first time, whichever comes first.

First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.

Routine maintenance:

Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Check whether the cooling water pipe is intact and tightly locked at the connecting parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check exhaust pipe joint for air leakage	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Chassis screws	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Tire wear	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary; Under severe working conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve, thermal insulation cotton, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Fasteners such as high-voltage distribution box and DC charging distribution box	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Deformation of or oil stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check the activated carbon high efficiency filter	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of severe environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter screen if necessary
PM2.5 quick tester filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of severe environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter screen if necessary
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Transmission filter cover	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3-0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft.	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check the sliding door guide rail pulley for wear	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km, clean away dust and foreign particles and apply lubricating oil.
Check the wear condition of the rubber pad on the moving component of the upper guide mechanism of the sliding door.	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Capacity test and correction	Check every 6 months or 72,000 km.
Maintenance of other items: Comply with the following maintenance interval and	mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.
Item	Time/Mileage Interval
High-voltage battery pack sealing	Test every two years or 40,000 km and replace the breather valve if necessary
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
EHS special gear oil	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance; replace the oil and the filter element assembly every four years or 60,000 km
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil type	Check rear drive electric assembly gear oil type during maintenance every two years or 40,000km.
Engine Maintenance: Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.	
Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Gasoline detergent	Add every 12 months or 10,000 km except the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 33,500 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Dust filter of charcoal canister	Replace every two years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

! REMINDER

- Gasoline detergent must be added except for the first maintenance, and the amount added each time is 1 bottle (180 ml/bottle).
- If a vehicle has a mileage of more than 20,000 km and has never been added with gasoline detergent, it is recommended to add 3 bottles (180 ml/bottle) at a time, and then add 2 bottles at a time every 7,500 km.
- For areas using ethanol gasoline, it is recommended to add 1 bottle (180 ml/bottle) of gasoline detergent to every other tank of fuel.
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt displays on the instrument cluster or the fuel indicator turns yellow.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km, whichever comes first) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the recommended maintenance intervals according to the actual situation to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature $<5^{\circ}\text{C}$) with short continuous driving time ($<15\text{min}$) in HEV mode or often creeps

! REMINDER

(vehicle speed $<10\text{ km/h}$) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
 - Before the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 50% when running in ECO mode.
 - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.

- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd., and by a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.



CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
 - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to

reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.

- Check vehicle paint and trims.
 - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
 - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
 - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
 - Fender liners protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.

- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a vehicle cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.



CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
 - Driving along the coast.
 - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
 - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.

- Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
- Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
- The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
- After raining.



CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, ensure all doors, hood, trunk, sunroof*, and access panels are closed.
- Do not open the charge port door to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
 - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 30 cm.
 - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
 - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern for the high-pressure washer (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spray).
 - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
- Comply with the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and its components.
- Do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.



CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon



CAUTION

- tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.

CAUTION

- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.
- Keep the control panel free of oil stain or water stain to prevent affecting the touch sensitivity. It is recommended to use a dust-free cloth instead of a paper towel or towel for wiping and maintenance to prevent affecting the timeliness of the fingerprint-resistant and oil-resistant function of the control panel.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile

CAUTION

- oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or alkali, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Power Sliding Doors

Maintenance of guide rail, pulley and middle guide rail wear plate

- Regularly check whether there is dust, deformation, depression or embedded foreign matter on the surface of the upper, middle and lower pulleys, guide rails and wear-resistant plates of the sliding door;
- If there is dust and foreign matter on the surface, use an air gun to clean inner wall of the guide rail and the pulley surface, or use a damp cloth to clean wear plate surface of the center guide rail.

CAUTION

- Before the maintenance of guide rail, pulley and wear plate, please turn off the power sliding door function;
- After cleaning, please open and close the door for three times, if there is obvious abnormal sound in the pulley, guide rail and wear-resistant plate, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

sliding door lock body maintenance

- Regularly inspect the position of the sliding door front lock body, the sliding door rear lock tongue, and the surface of the lock body housing, and check for foreign objects such as sand, stones, dust, etc.
- If there is dust and foreign matter on the surface, use an air gun or a damp cloth to clean it.

CAUTION

- After performing the maintenance measures, if the noticeable abnormal noises still occurs, it is recommended to have the vehicle inspected at the authorized DENZA dealer.

Tracking mechanism maintenance

- The buffer pad of the movable assembly of the guiding mechanism is made of synthetic rubber, which is a wearing part. The wear of the guiding mechanism buffer pad varies with different use conditions and frequency. Please pay attention to the following matters in order to prevent the power

sliding door from producing shaking noise during driving:

- Regularly check the surface of the rubber pad of the tracking mechanism movable component, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance if there is a noticeable wear.
- If there is obvious shaking in the guiding mechanism during driving, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.

CAUTION

- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.
- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.

CAUTION

- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator and expansion tank should be checked at each charge.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.

- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires - Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights - Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.



REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.



WARNING

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.



REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.

REMINDER

- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance

- Wipe off dust or sand on the sealing strips of the sunroof with a wet cloth to avoid scratching them, which may affect their sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand around the roof metal sheet with a wet cloth to prevent abrasion of sealing strips when the sunroof is closed, which may affect the sunroof sealing performance.
- Frequently clean the rails, front sash and other parts to avoid the accumulation of dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent the drainage holes from being blocked by such debris, resulting in water leakage into the vehicle.
- When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
- The sunroof freezes easily in winter. Forcibly opening the frozen sunroof will damage sealing strips or other parts. Instead, warm up the vehicle and turn on the A/C system to accelerate the melting of snow and ice on the sunroof. Try to open the sunroof after the temperature inside reaches a certain level. Dry the residual moisture on the sunroof to prevent it from freezing.
- Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- When in normal state, the vehicle can be left in storage for a long of time with the low-voltage battery remain connected, as long as it has been fully charged before. In addition, avoid waking up the vehicle frequently, or the battery SOC may deviate too much to start the vehicle.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials,

such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.

- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Shift to "P" or "N" and engage the EPB. Pull the hood release lever on the left under the dashboard twice, the hood will pop up slightly and can be opened manually.



2. Lifting the hood over the balance position and letting go will allow the hood to spring to the maximum angle.
3. Pulling down the hood past the balance position and letting go will close the hood.
4. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

WARNING

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.

WARNING

- Do not force down the hood or release it from a high position.

Engine Maintenance

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

Engine Oil

- Be sure to use the correct engine oil specification.
- Be sure to check the motor oil specifications on the packaging container when purchasing, the specifications must conform to the vehicle use.

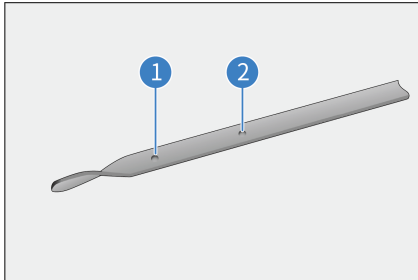
Recommended motor oil

- Motor oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality and purified motor oil should be preferred. DENZA strongly suggests you to use the original engine oil.
- Motor oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather and road conditions. The new engine may have a higher fuel consumption rate.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine to the normal operating temperature, and then stop the engine.

2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and condition, and check whether the level is between ① and ②. Fill or replace motor oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back



- When the low oil pressure warning lamp is on, add motor oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to spill the motor oil on vehicle components.
- Oil, engine components and the exhaust system are high-temperature components that can cause burns. Be careful and wear protective garment when working in the engine compartment.
- Long-term exposure to or frequent contact with used motor oil can cause skin diseases. When this kind of oil sticks to the skin, it can be washed with soapy water and clean water.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

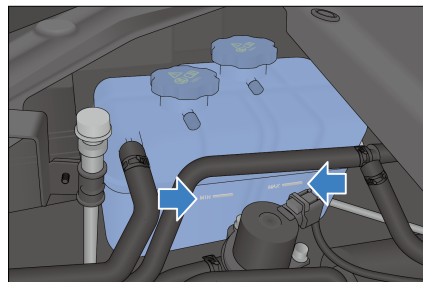
1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine

is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N".

2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum(MAX) and Minimum(MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.



- Refill coolant to the MAX marker line if the level is below the MIN marker line. and check the cooling system for leakage.

CAUTION

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the reservoir cap, make sure that the motor, high-voltage electronic control

CAUTION

assembly, refrigerant reservoir and radiator are all cooled down.

- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for adding the special type of coolant that is compatible with the battery.

REMINDER

- Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.
- Battery coolant may fade in color when exposed to high ultraviolet rays such as sunlight. If the hood needs to be opened in the process of vehicle use and maintenance, direct sunlight should be avoided. The performance parameters of coolant do not change after it fades, and normal use is not affected.

Radiator and Condenser

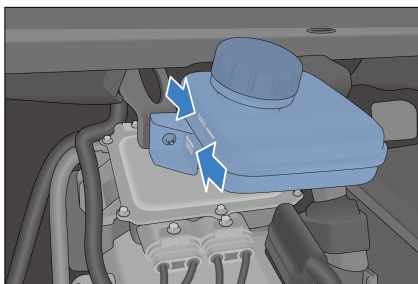
It is suggested to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection if the radiator or condenser has been very dirty or the working condition is not steady.

REMINDER

- To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.
- To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not operate them yourself.

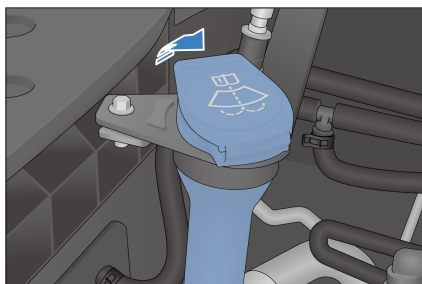
Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washing fluid.

Fuel filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the travel time and mileage specified in the maintenance schedule.

- When the fuel is dirty or contaminated, it is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km or six months, as the filter is more likely to be blocked.
- It is recommended to replace the fuel filter at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Because there is pressure in the fuel system, if all the oil lines are not properly handled, the fuel may spill out and cause danger.
- If you have used more than one barrel of impure fuel, the filter should be changed earlier.
- If the filter is blocked by dirt, it is recommended to contact a DENZA

authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or replacement of the filter.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
 - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
 - In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage

habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days) even if it doesn't rain.
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.

- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:
 1. Go to infotainment system and tap Vehicle Health to enable front/rear wiper maintenance. The wipers rotate out.
 2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tire

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.



WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of

maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.

- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.



REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.



CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
 - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
 - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
 - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- Tires with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Tire Rotation

- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a 4S store for tire pressure matching.

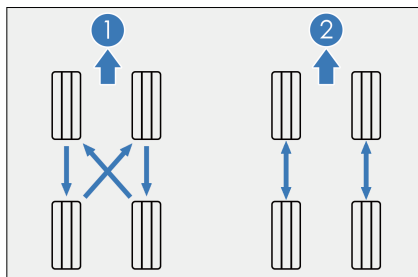
Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear

wheels can be swapped when rotating tires. See the illustration.

- Tire rotation is as shown:

1. Non-directional tires and wheels
2. Directional tires and wheels



Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.

- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at DENZA authorized dealers or service providers. Please consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.
- If your vehicle is equipped with silent tires*, it is recommended to replace with original tires at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. If you want to replace with ordinary tires, take accessories such as inflator and tire sealant to provide your vehicle with the ability of emergency driving.
- Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard PDB is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The rear compartment fuse box is located on the left side of the trunk.
- The positive fuse box is under the front passenger's seat and beside the low-voltage battery.



REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle performance and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in four fuse boxes respectively.

- The under-hood PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.

07

WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....238

When Faults Occur

Reflective vest

The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

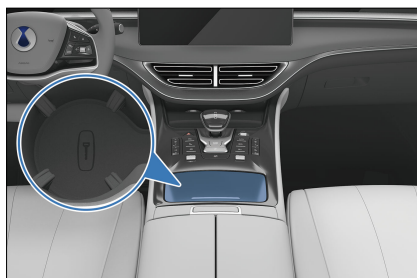
If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button. The smart key warning light comes on and the speaker in the vehicle gives a beep.

3. Keep the smart key close to the no-power mode sign on the auxiliary dashboard within 30 seconds after the speaker beeps. The speaker beeps again, the smart key warning light turns out, and the vehicle can be started.
4. Start the vehicle within five seconds after the speaker beeps again.



If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see **P123**) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the key. If all the keys cannot work, there may be fault in the key or smart key system, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.

2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the generator starts the engine at normal speed, but the engine does not run:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting the Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts.
- If the engine is flooded, the following operations can be performed manually:
 1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N".
 2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

- If the engine has been started for five seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.



REMINDER

- If continuous engine starting fails, the instrument reports "Engine starting failure, please drive to the safe area to check". Do not try to start the engine again, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Turn on the hazard warning light.
- Start the engine again.
- The engine runs out of oil and starts and stops frequently.
 - If there is no oil in the tank, it is normal for the engine to start and stop repeatedly. When it is recognized that there is no oil in the oil tank, and the engine is repeatedly started/stopped, and the engine fails to start. If there is no oil in the fuel tank, the engine will start and stop frequently for a period of time. Add fuel until the fuel pipe is full, and the engine returns to normal operation.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, engage the EPB, and press the "P" button. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.



REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates the high pressure of the engine.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.



WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a

DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.

5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cover after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value. When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark, tighten its cover, and start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.



WARNING

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.



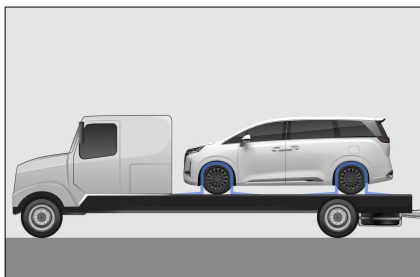
CAUTION

- Do not allow other vehicles to pull your car with only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing methods:

- Flatbed device

- If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



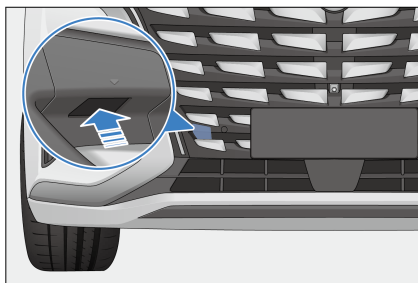
CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

- The installation point of vehicle tow eye is shown in the illustration.

- Pull the towing hook cover outward at the notch on the lower side of the towing hook cover to open it.
- Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency rescue situations where the vehicle needs to be towed, observe the following to avoid vehicle damage or personal injuries:
 - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions, with a tow speed no more than 5 km/h.
 - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
 - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
 - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
 - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
 - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
 - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
 - When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and

have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.

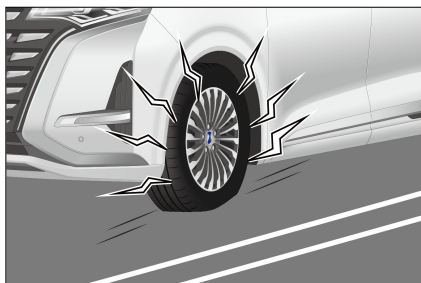
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Engage the EPB and press the "P" button.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.



- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

- In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.
- These include: warning triangle, reflective vest, lug nut cap removal clamp, tire repair kit, and tow eye.
- The reflective vest is in the utility box or tool kit. In case of a sudden breakdown during driving, if you need to get out of the vehicle urgently to check for faults or handle accidents, always wear the reflective vest properly before that to ensure your safety.

Placing the warning triangle

- When parking for repair, remember to place a triangular warning sign behind the vehicle following the local traffic regulations with red triangle side facing oncoming vehicles. After the repair, put the warning triangle back for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.

2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit*

- The tire repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.
- The tire repair kit is in the trunk and can be taken out from the interior trim panel.
- The tire repair kit includes: sealant, inflator, and adhesive sticker with marked maximum allowable speed and instructions.

WARNING

- The tire repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, tyre puncture sealant kit is prohibited.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

WARNING

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

Using the tire repair kit

- Refer to labels on the inflator for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.

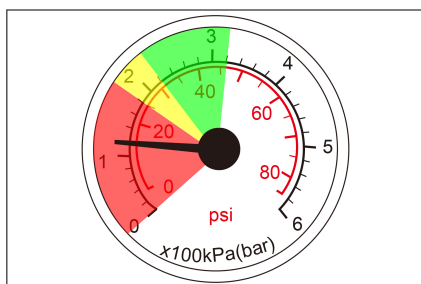
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off when you plugging the power supply into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.
- Before using the power plug, make sure that its voltage and power do not exceed the 12 V and 120 W limits marked on the

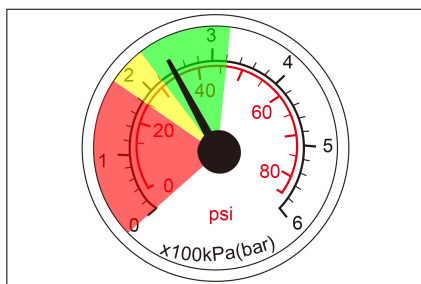
! REMINDER

backup power supply. Exceeding these limits poses a safety hazard.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
- If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.



- If the tire pressure reaches between 180 and 320 kPa (green and yellow areas shown in the figure), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.



- Pull over the vehicle and check the tire pressure on the instrument cluster.

- If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa, drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
- If the tire pressure is between 130 and 220 kPa, repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
- If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

! REMINDER

- Using tire repair kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tire sealant has been used.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Abide by the maximum vehicle speed limit of 80 km/h. Do not continue driving if any strong vibration, driving instability, or noise occurs while the vehicle is running.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.
- After using the tire repair kit, it is recommended to purchase a new tire sealant at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

08

TECHNICAL DATA

Data.....	246
Information.....	251

Data

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5250
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1960
Height (mm)	1920
Wheelbase (mm)	3110
Front track (mm)	1675
Rear track (mm)	1675
Front overhang (mm)	985
Rear overhang (mm)	1155
Approach angle (°)	15
Departure angle (°)	15

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter
Curb weight (kg)	2665
Front axle load (kg)	1400
Rear axle load (kg)	1265
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	3190
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1502
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1688
Number of occupants (persons)	7

Engine

Item	Parameter
Model	BYD476ZQC

Item	Parameter
Type	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (ml)	1497
Rated power of engine (kW/rpm)	102/5,200
Max. net engine power (kW/rpm)	96/5,200
Maximum torque (N · m/rpm)	220/1600-4000
Emission standard	China VI emission standard

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	68.2

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	Front-wheel drive: TZ220XYS Rear control module: TZ180XSN
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	4WD
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 80/6100/124 Rear: 25/4775/50
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 170/16000/340 Rear: 45/15000/110

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180
Maximum gradeability (%)	40

Item	Parameter
Driving range under comprehensive working conditions (L/100km)(NEDC)	1.06

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	235/60 R18
Tire pressure (kPa)	Front/Back:260/260(R18)
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	5

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber-side (°)	-0.5±0.75
Front toe-in-side (°)	0±0.08
Kingpin inclination angle-side (°)	12.5±0.75
Kingpin caster angle-side (°)	4.7±0.75
Rear camber-side (°)	-0.5±0.5
Rear wheel toe-in-side (°)	0.067±0.08

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1-5
Front brake disc standard thickness (mm)	30
Front brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	28
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	25
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	23
Front friction plate standard thickness (mm)	11
Front friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	6.5

Item	Parameter
Minimum thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	2.5

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seat (seat cushion depth measured)	30 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	25 °
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	25° forward and 50° backward from the designed position; slide rail: 200mm forward and 60mm backward; slide rail inclination: 2.5°
Forward and backward moving space for the second-row seat (seat cushion depth measured)	30 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of second-row seats (cushion depth measured)	27°
Normal service conditions of second-row seatbacks	28° forward, 43° backward
Forward and backward moving spaces for third row seat (seat cushion depth measured)	30 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of the third-row seats (cushion depth measured)	25 °
Normal service conditions of the third-row seatbacks	45° backward, 3.75° backward

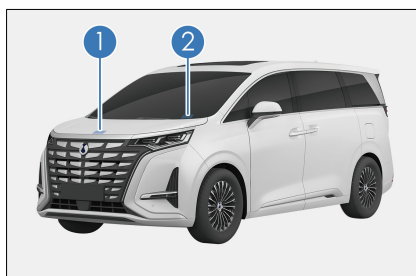
Fluid

Item	Parameter
BYD476ZQC engine motor oil type	SP 0W-20; C5 0 W-20 meet SN +/SP specification simultaneously
BYD476ZQC engine oil amount (L)	Remain machine filter 3.5, replace machine filter 3.7
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV

Item	Parameter
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	3.5 for replacement and 4.1 for overhaul
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil (4WD)	Castrol BOT-384
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil amount (4WD) (L)	0.5~0.6
Brake fluid type	DOT4
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.1 ± 0.02
Motor controller battery coolant type	Ethylene glycol long-acting anti-rust antifreeze
Motor controller battery coolant amount (L)	12.3 ± 0.5
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol long-acting anti-rust antifreeze
Engine coolant amount (L)	9.3 ± 0.5

REMINDER

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.



Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Positions of attached VIN:

- ① Attached on the gearbox
- ② Attached on the VIN slot on the upper cover of the front windshield cross sill

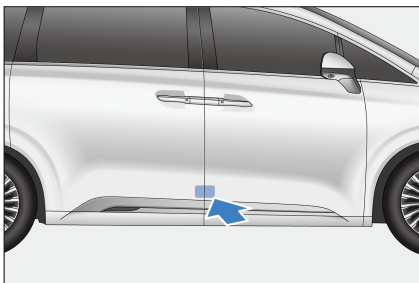
Position of engraved VIN:

VIN is engraved on the lower beam of the front right seat, as shown in the figure. After connecting the VDS, VIN can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



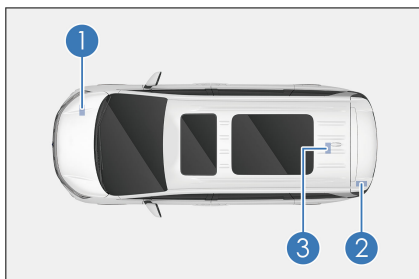
Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.



Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

- ① The model and number of the engine is engraved on the engine, and that of drive motor is located near the lock ring right under the hood.
- ② The rear motor* model and serial number are located near the lower mounting bracket of the power spring on the left side of the back door.
- ③ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

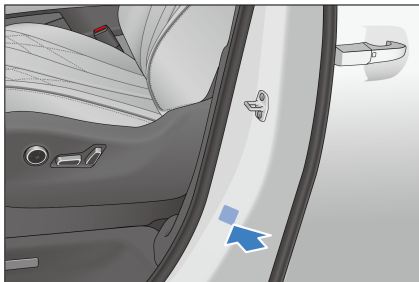


Information

Warning Labels

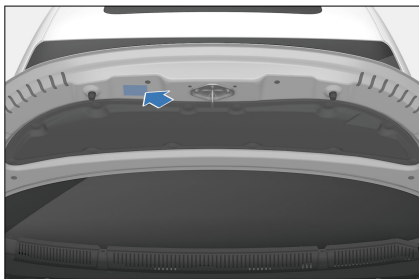
Tire pressure indication label

Tire pressure indication label is attached near the locking ring on the driver's door.



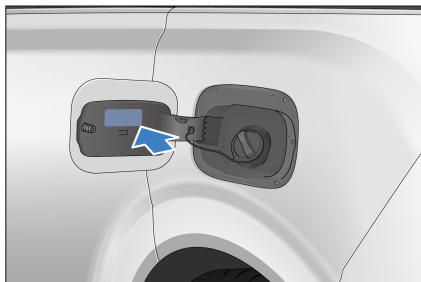
Labels on the engine compartment

The air conditioner filling and cooling fan indication label is attached on the inner engine compartment cap and the right lock ring.



Oil indicator label

The gasoline indication label is attached on the middle of the inner side of the fuel door.



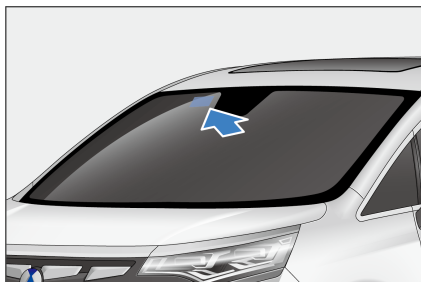
Removing the charging cable label

The label showing charging connector removal precautions is attached to the inner surface of the DC charge port door.



Transponder Mounting

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power.....	197
--------------------------	-----

A

A/C Buttons.....	186
A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches.....	223
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....	175
Adaptive Front Light (AFL).....	171
Adjusting Front-Seat Head Supports	72
Adjusting Rear Seats.....	71
Adjusting Rear-Seat Head Supports	73
Adjusting Second-Row Seats.....	70
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually.....	78
Air Purification System*.....	190
Airbag Overview.....	16
Anti-lock Braking System.....	182
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	32
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....	130
Automatic Vehicle Washing.....	222

B

Bill Box.....	192
Blind Spot Detection (BSD).....	163
Brake fluid.....	231
Break-in Period.....	114

C

Carpet.....	223
Carrying Luggage.....	119
Center Console Cubby.....	193
Charging Port Immobilizer System.... 107	
Charging Precautions.....	97
Charging Safety Warnings.....	96

Child Protection Lock.....	66
Child Restraint System Classification	22
Coolant.....	230
Cup Holders.....	194

D

Data Collection and Processing.....	32
Discharge Instructions.....	106
Door Bin.....	192
Doors and Windows.....	223
Driver Assistance Switches.....	88
Driver's Door Switches.....	86
Driving Precautions.....	131
Driving Safety Precautions.....	115
Driving Safety Systems.....	180
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption	125

E

Electronic Smart Key.....	52
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key.....	61
EPB Switch.....	127
Exterior Cleaning.....	221

F

Fire Prevention Instructions.....	121
Front Interior Lights.....	92
Front Windshield Wipers and Washer	78
Fuel Selection.....	116
Function Definition.....	187

G

Gear Shift Controls.....	126
General Charging Troubleshooting	99
Glasses Case.....	194
Glove Box.....	193

Grab Handles.....	195
-------------------	-----

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....	89
Head-up Display (HUD)*	173
Heating and Ventilation System* ...	70
High-Voltage Battery.....	111

I

If a Tire Goes Flat.....	242
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....	239
Indicators/Warning Lights.....	39
Infotainment Touchscreen.....	201
Installing Child Restraint Systems with ISOFIX Rigid Anchor.....	23
Instructions for Wading into Water....	120
Instrument Cluster.....	38
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)	149
Interior Cleaning.....	223
Interior Rearview Mirror.....	81
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....	27

L

Leather.....	224
Light Switches.....	83
Lights.....	227
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key.....	56
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key	57
Low-Voltage Battery.....	112

M

Maintenance Information.....	219
Maintenance Plan.....	214

Maintenance Schedule.....	214
Manual Vehicle Washing.....	221
Mode Switches.....	90

O

Odometer Switch.....	88
Opening the Hood.....	229
Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance....	228
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts.....	47

P

Paint Maintenance Tips.....	220
Panoramic View System*	175
Parking Assist System*	177
Phone Holder.....	192

R

Refrigerator door switch button....	90
Refueling.....	116
Regenerative Braking Settings....	110
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....	118
Roof Vents*	189

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....	118
Scheduled Charging.....	105
Seat Belt Maintenance.....	223
Seat Belt Overview.....	12
Seat Precautions.....	67
Seat Side Table.....	200
Seatback Pockets.....	193
Self-Maintenance Precautions....	225
Side Mirror Adjustment.....	83
Smart Access and Start System.....	64
Snow Chains.....	132
Starting the Vehicle.....	123

Steering Assist Mode Settings.....	78
Steering Wheel Switches.....	75
Sun Visor.....	195
Sunroof Switch.....	91
Sunshade.....	199

T

Target SOC Setting.....	109
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.	173
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	156
Trailer Towing.....	114
Transponder Mounting.....	252
Tray Table*.....	200
Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking....	60

U

USB Ports.....	196
Using AC Charging Piles.....	102
Using DC Charging Piles*.....	103
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.....	100
Using Seat Belts.....	12

V

V2L External Discharging.....	106
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention.....	220
Vehicle Identification.....	250
Vehicle Storage Instructions.....	228
Vehicle Use Suggestions.....	115

W

Warning Labels.....	251
Washer.....	231
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side.....	88
Winter Driving Precautions.....	132
Wireless Phone Charger.....	197
Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System.....	29

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
EDR	Event Data Recorder	ABS	Antilock Braking System
ESC	Electronic Stability Controller	ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
USB	Universal Serial Bus	SOC	State of Charge
EPB	Electronic Parking Brake	ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
LDA	Lane Departure Assist	LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LDP	Lane Departure Prevention	ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	DOW	Door Open Warning
RCW	Rear Collision Warning	RCTA	Rear Collision Traffic Alert
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alert System	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
TCS	Traction Control System	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
HDC	Hill Descent Control	PM2.5	Particulate Matter 2.5
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum

